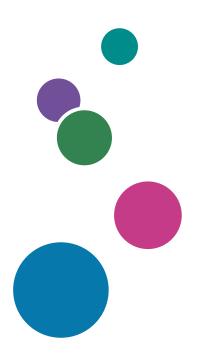
# IM 550/600 series

## **User Guide**

### **Selected Version**



Getting Started	1
Сору	2
Fax	3
Print	4
Scan	5
Document Server	6
Web Image Monitor	7
Adding Paper and Toner	8
Troubleshooting	9
Specifications for the Machine	10
Legal and Contact Information	11

For information not found in this manual, see the online manuals available on our web site (https://www.ricoh.com/) or via the control panel.



For safe and correct use, be sure to read Safety Information before using the machine.

## How to Read the Manuals

### Symbols Used in the Manuals

This manual uses the following symbols:

#### Coloritant 🔁

Indicates points to pay attention to when using functions. This symbol indicates points that may result in the product or service becoming unusable or result in the loss of data if the instructions are not obeyed. Be sure to read these explanations.

#### Vote

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

[] Indicates the names of keys or buttons on the product or display.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

How to Read the Manuals	1
Symbols Used in the Manuals	1
1. Getting Started	
Turning On and Off the Power	9
Turning On the Main Power	9
Turning Off the Main Power	10
Energy Saving Mode	10
Guide to Names and Functions of Components	12
Exterior: Front and Left View	
Exterior: Front and Right View	14
Exterior: Rear and Left View	16
Interior: Front View	
Names and Functions of the Control Panel	19
Touch Panel/Interface	19
LED Indicators	20
Order of Option Installation	22
Attaching the Paper Feed Unit	
Installing the Wireless LAN Interface Board	
Installing the IEEE 1284 Interface Board	
Installing the Device Server Option	
Installing the File Format Converter	
Installing SD Card Options	35
Changing the Display Language	
How to Use the Home Screen	
Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips	
How to Use the Copy Screen	44
How to Use the Copy Screen (Standard View)	
How to Use the Copy Screen (Full View)	46
Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function	
How to Use the Fax Screen	
Customizing the [Settings] Screen	
How to Use the Scanner Screen	
Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen	

Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen	
Adding an Icon/Widget to the Home Screen Moving or Deleting Icons and Widgets	
	56
Creating a Folder to Organize Icons	
Registering Frequently Used Settings as a Program	
Registering Settings as a Program	
Changing the Contents of the Program	60
Logging In from the Control Panel	
Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password Logging In Using an IC Card	63
	64
Logging In Using a Mobile Device	65
Authenticating Using the User Code	
Changing the Login Password	66
Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass	
Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF)	71
2. Сору	
Basic Procedure for Copying Documents	75
Making Enlarged or Reduced Copies	77
Specifying a Copy Ratio or Size	77
Enlarging or Reducing According to the Paper Size	79
Reducing Slightly to Increase the Margins	80
Duplex Copying	
Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper	
Copying Onto Envelopes	
Copying Onto Envelopes in the Bypass Tray	
Copying Onto Envelopes in the Paper Tray	
Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number	90
3. Fax	
Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes	93
Registering Fax Numbers in the Address Book	96
Registering a Fax Number and Send Conditions	96
Changing/Deleting the Registered Data Such as Fax Number	
Displaying a Preview before Sending a Fax	

Viewing the Transmission Result of Sent Faxes	
Confirming the Information on the Fax Screen	
Checking the Result in Communication Result Report	
Checking the Result in Immediate TX Result Report	
Checking the Result in Communication Failure Report	
Checking the Result in Error Report	
Viewing Memory Storage Report	
Checking by E-mail	
Confirming the Information in Web Image Monitor	
4. Print	
Installing the Printer Driver by Using Device Software Manager Installer	
Installing Device Software Manager from the CD-ROM	
Installing Device Software Manager from the Downloaded File	
Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (Windows)	
Installing the PCL 6 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM	113
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM	116
Installing the PCL 6/PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the Downloaded File	
If the Machine Cannot Be Found	
Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (OS X/macOS)	
Installing the PPD file	
Registering the Machine in [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners]	
Specifying the Option Settings	
Basic Procedure for Printing Documents	
Printing a Document in Windows	
Printing a Document in OS X/macOS	
Printing on Both Sides of Paper	
Specifying 2-sided Print (Windows)	
Specifying 2-sided Print (OS X/macOS)	
Combining and Printing Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet of Paper	
Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (Windows)	
Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (OS X/macOS)	137
Printing on Envelopes	
Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel	

Printing from a USB Flash Memory Device or SD Card Directly	142
Printable File Formats	142
Printing from a Memory Storage Device	143
5. Scan	
Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data by E-mail	145
Basic Procedure for Sending an E-mail	145
Registering the E-mail Destination Specified When Sending an E-mail in the Address Book	147
Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data to a Folder	150
Printing the Check Sheet	150
Confirming the Computer Information (Windows)	151
Creating a Shared Folder (Windows)	152
Confirming the Computer Information (OS X/macOS)	155
Creating a Shared Folder (OS X/macOS)	
Registering the Created Shared Folder in the Address Book	157
Basic Procedure for Performing Send to Folder	
Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density	161
Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document	164
6. Document Server	
Storing Documents in Document Server	167
Printing Documents in Document Server	169
Printing a Document with the Settings Specified When Scanned	169
Changing the Print Settings to Print a Document	
Specifying a Page to Print	172
7. Web Image Monitor	
Using Web Image Monitor	
What You Can Do on the Web Image Monitor	176
Web Image Monitor Screen	177
Specifying Web Image Monitor Help	178
8. Adding Paper and Toner	
Loading Paper into the Paper Tray	
Loading Paper into Tray 1 to 5	181
Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray	186
Specifying Regular Sizes Using the Control Panel	187

Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel	
Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings	
Recommended Paper Sizes and Types	
Tray 1	
Paper Feed Unit	
Bypass Tray	192
Notes on Special Paper	193
Paper Thickness for Each Paper Weight	193
Unusable Paper	
Paper Storage	195
Saving Printouts	
Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status	
Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status	
Using the Copy Function	
Using the Printer Function	199
Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper	
Copying onto Letterhead Paper	
Printing onto Letterhead Paper Using the Printer Driver	
Recommended Original Size and Weight	
Replacing the Toner	
Watching the Video for Replacing the Toner	
How to Replace the Toner	
Precautions When Storing Toner	
Precautions When Replacing the Toner	207
Disposing Exhausted Toners	
Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle	
Watching the Video for Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle	
How to Replace the Waste Toner Bottle	
Precautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle	
Disposing the Used Waste Toner Bottle	
9. Troubleshooting	
Alert Sounds	
Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel	

When an Icon Is Displayed with a Message	
When the [Check Status] Indicator Is Lit or Flashing	
When the Machine Cannot Be Operated	
When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation on the Control Panel	223
When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation from a Computer	227
When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated	229
When a Message Appears While Using the Copy Function	232
When a Message Appears While Using Document Server	233
When a Message Appears While Using the Fax Function	234
Messages that Appear During Operation or When Sending/Receiving a Fax Cannot Be Pe	
Messages that Appear When the Machine Cannot Connect to the Network	
Messages that Appear When the Remote Fax Function Is Unavailable	244
When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function	249
Messages that Appear without Error Codes	249
Messages that Appear with Error Codes	
When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function	
Messages that Appear on the Control Panel	
Messages that Appear on the Computer	270
When Other Messages Appear	277
Messages that Appear When Machine Login Fails	
Messages that Appear When Logging in to the Machine Using an IC Card Fails	
Messages that Appear When the LDAP Server Is Unavailable	287
Messages that Appear When There Is a Problem with the Certificate	
Messages that Appear When an Application Site Cannot Be Used	
When Paper or an Original Is Jammed	
If Paper Jams Occur Frequently	292
10. Specifications for the Machine	
Model-Specific Information	
List of Specifications	298
Specifications for the Main Unit	
Specifications for the Document Server	
Specifications for Facsimile	305

Specifications for Printer	311
Specifications for Scanner	313
Specifications for the ADF	317
Specifications for Paper Feed Unit	
Specifications for IEEE 1284 Interface Board	
Specifications for Wireless LAN Board	
Specifications for Device Server Option	319
The Setting Values of the Transmission Function	320
Send Email	320
Send to Folder	321
Broadcast Transmission	
Printable Area and Margin	
Machine Options	
Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options	324
Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options	324
Functions Requiring Optional Configurations	327
Copy Function	327
Facsimile Functions	
Printer Function	328
Scanner Function	
Others	
Function Compatibility	
11. Legal and Contact Information	
Environmental Regulations	333
ENERGY STAR Program	333
Energy Saving Functions	
User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment Integrion A (mainly Europe)	
Note for the Battery and/or Accumulator Symbol (For EU countries only) I region A (mainly	
Environmental Advice for Users (Region A (mainly Europe)	
Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA) (Region B (mainly North Ar	
Trademarks (User Guide)	337

# 1. Getting Started

## Turning On and Off the Power

To turn the machine on and off, press the main power switch on the right of the machine.

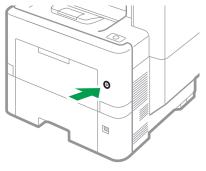
#### 🚼 Important

• When you are using the fax function on the machine, do not turn the power off under normal operation. If the power is turned off, data stored in the fax memory will be lost in about one hour after the machine is turned off. If you have to turn the power off or unplug the power cord for some reason, make sure 100% is shown as available memory on the screen for the fax function.

#### Turning On the Main Power

#### C Important

- When you push the main power switch, wait at least 10 seconds after it is confirmed that the main power indicator has lit up or gone out.
- 1. Make sure the power cord is firmly plugged into the wall outlet.
- 2. Push the main power switch.



EAT066

The main power indicator goes on.

Application icons appear on the [Home] screen as the applications start running.

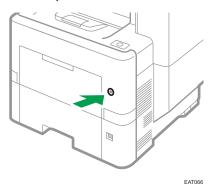
Vote

• When the power is turned on, the screen may show that the machine is performing an auto restart. Do not turn off the main power while the machine is processing. It takes about five minutes until the machine restarts.

#### Turning Off the Main Power

#### Comportant 🗋

- Do not turn off the power while the machine is in operation. To turn the power off, confirm that the
  operation is finished.
- Do not hold down the main power switch while turning off the main power. Doing so forcibly turns
  off the machine's power and may damage the hard disk or memory and cause malfunctions.
- Do not press the main power switch soon after pressing the main power switch on the machine.
   When you turn the power on or off, wait at least 10 seconds after confirming that the main power indicator on the control panel has turned on or off.
- 1. Push the main power switch.



The main power indicator on the right side of the control panel turns off. The main power turns off automatically after the machine has shut down properly. If the screen on the control panel does not disappear, contact your service representative.

#### **Energy Saving Mode**

When the machine is not operated for a specified period of time, the machine enters the "Energy Saver Mode" automatically. "Energy Save mode" has two modes, "Low Power mode" and "Sleep mode". In the factory default, the machine is configured to use "Sleep mode".

#### Low Power Mode

If you do not use the machine for a certain period after an operation, the display will turn off and the machine goes into Low Power mode. The machine uses less electricity in Low Power mode.

You can change the amount of time that the machine waits before switching to Low Power mode under [Low Power Mode Timer].

See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

You can change the machine's settings to enter Low Power mode when you press the [Energy Save] of [Energy Saver Key to Change Mode] under [Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools].

See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

To exit Low Power mode, do one of the following:

- Lift the ADF
- Place an original in the ADF
- Load paper in the bypass tray
- Touch the display panel
- Start Print Jobs
- Open any cover
- Open any paper tray

#### Sleep Mode

In this mode, the display of the control panel turns off and the main power indicator blinks slowly. Power consumption is minimized. When you do not operate the machine for a specified period of time or press [Energy Save] (C), the machine enters Sleep mode.

• You can specify the amount of time that the machine waits before entering Sleep mode under [Sleep Mode Timer] or [Weekly Timer].

Under [Weekly Timer], you can specify the times and the days of the week that the machine enters Sleep mode.

Only the administrator can specify [Weekly Timer] when administrator authentication is enabled.

See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

- The machine recovers from Sleep mode when you perform one of the following:
  - Lift the ADF.
  - Place an original in the ADF.
  - Touch the display of the control panel.

#### Vote

 The energy saving functions are disabled when an error occurs or while an operation is in progress.

## Guide to Names and Functions of Components

### 

• Do not obstruct the machine's vents. Doing so can result in fire as the internal components are overheated.

#### **Region A and Region B symbols**

(mainly Europe and Asia), (mainly Europe), or (mainly Asia)

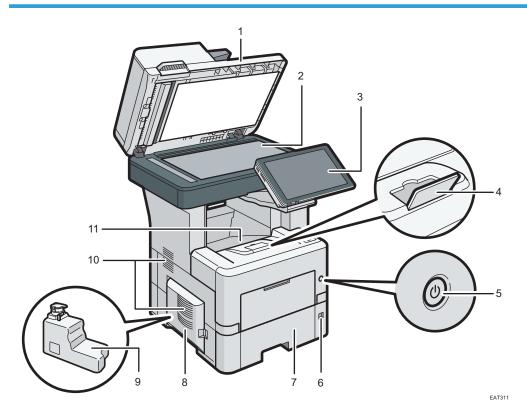
(mainly North America)

Differences in the functions of Region A and Region B models are indicated by two symbols.

Read the information indicated by the symbol that corresponds to the region of the model you are using.

page 297 "Model-Specific Information"

### **Exterior: Front and Left View**



1. Auto Document Feeder (ADF)

Lower the cover over originals placed on the exposure glass.

If you load a stack of originals in the ADF, the ADF will automatically feed the originals one by one.

#### 2. Exposure glass

Place originals facedown here.

See "Printing Documents in Order of Priority", User Guide (Full Version).

#### 3. Control panel

page 19 "Names and Functions of the Control Panel"

#### 4. Tray extension

Pull this fence to prevent paper from falling off.

#### 5. Main power switch

To turn the power on and off, press the main power switch.

page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"

#### 6. Paper size dial

Use this dial to specify the paper size. To use a paper size that is not indicated on the paper size dial, set the dial to " $\star$ ". If this is the case, set the paper size using the control panel.

#### 7. Paper tray

Standard paper tray. Load paper here.

page 181 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"

#### 8. Left cover

Open to access the waste toner bottle. page 210 "Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle"

#### 9. Waste toner bottle

Waste toner is collected here. Replace the bottle when it is full.

#### 10. Vents

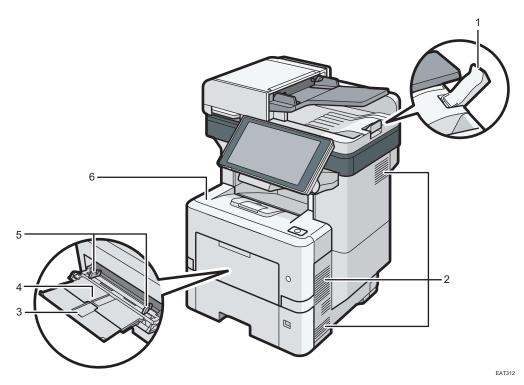
Holes for ventilating the inside the machine to prevent the internal components from overheating.

#### 11. Standard tray

Copied/printed paper and received fax pages are delivered here.

### **Exterior: Front and Right View**

#### IM 550F/IM 600F



1. ADF tray extender

Pull this extender out to prevent originals larger than A4D or  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$  from falling.

#### 2. Vents

Holes for ventilating the inside the machine to prevent the internal components from overheat.

#### 3. Extender for the bypass tray

Pull this extender out when loading paper larger than A4D or  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ .

#### 4. Bypass tray

Use the tray to copy or print on OHP transparencies, adhesive labels, and paper that cannot be loaded in the paper trays.

page 186 "Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray"

#### 5. Paper guides

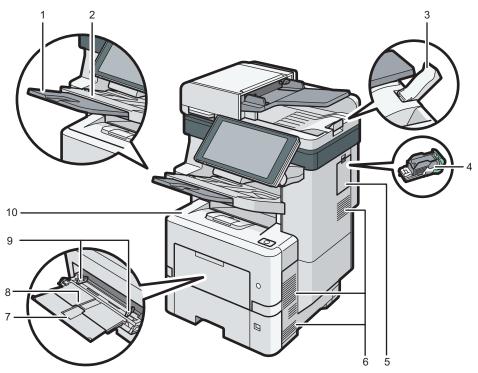
When loading paper in the bypass tray, align the paper guides with the edges of the paper.

#### 6. Front cover

Open to access the inside of the machine and remove jammed paper.

Open here to replace the print cartridge.

#### IM 600SRF



EAT313

#### 1. Extender for the finisher shift tray

Pull this extender out when loading paper larger than A4D or  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ .

#### 2. Finisher shift tray

Sorted or stapled papers are delivered here.

#### 3. ADF tray extender

Pull this extender out to prevent originals larger than A4D or  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$  from falling.

#### 4. Staple cartridge

Staple cartridge for the finisher. Replace the cartridge when the staples run out.

#### 5. Right cover

Open this cover to replace the staple cartridge.

#### 6. Vents

Holes for ventilating the inside the machine to prevent the internal components from overheating.

#### 7. Extender for the bypass tray

Pull this extender out when loading paper larger than A4D or  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ .

#### 8. Bypass tray

Use the tray to copy or print on OHP transparencies, adhesive labels, and paper that cannot be loaded paper trays.

#### 9. Paper guides

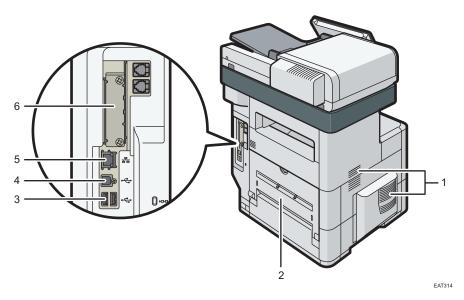
When loading paper in the bypass tray, align the paper guides with the edges of the paper.

#### 10. Front cover

Open to access the inside of the machine and remove jammed paper. Open here to replace the print cartridge.

#### Exterior: Rear and Left View

#### IM 550F/IM 600F



#### 1. Vents

Holes for ventilating the inside the machine to prevent the internal components from overheat. After large-volume printing, the ventilation fan may continue to work to lower the temperature inside the machine.

#### 2. Rear Cover

Open to access the inside of the machine.

#### 3. USB2.0 Interface Type A

Use the port to connect the IC card authentication device.

#### 4. USB2.0 Interface Type B

Use the port to connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable.

#### 5. Ethernet port

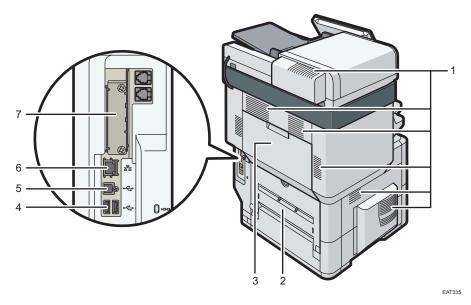
Use a network interface cable to connect the machine to a network.

#### 6. Optional interface board slot

Optional interface boards can be inserted.

Insert an optional wireless LAN interface board, IEEE 1284 interface board, Device server or File format converter.

#### IM 600SRF



#### 1. Vents

Holes for ventilating the inside the machine to prevent the internal components from overheat. After large-volume printing, the ventilation fan may continue to work to lower the temperature inside the machine.

#### 2. Rear cover

Open to access the inside of the machine.

#### 3. Rear upper cover

Open to remove jammed paper.

#### 4. USB2.0 Interface Type A

Use the port to connect the IC card authentication device.

#### 5. USB2.0 Interface Type B

Use the port to connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable.

#### 6. Ethernet port

Use a network interface cable to connect the machine to a network.

#### 7. Optional interface board slot

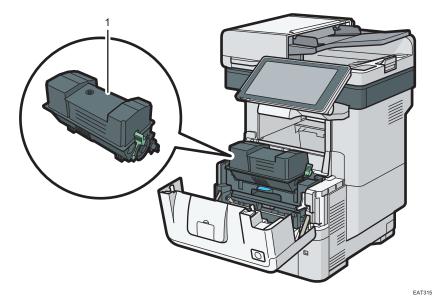
Optional interface boards can be inserted.

Insert an optional wireless LAN interface board, IEEE 1284 interface board, Device server or File format converter.

### Note

- The fan inside the machine near the vents may continue running to cool the machine after a print job.
- page 277 "When Other Messages Appear"

### Interior: Front View



#### 1. Print cartridge

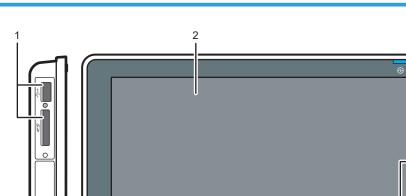
Messages appear on the screen when the print cartridge needs to be replaced, or a new cartridge needs to be prepared.

page 203 "Replacing the Toner"

## Names and Functions of the Control Panel

The touch panel (Smart Operation Panel) that displays the operation screen of the machine is referred to as the "Control Panel".

- On the left side of the control panel, interfaces for connecting external devices and slots to insert an SD card/USB flash memory device are provided.
- Even when the screen is turned off, the LED indicators on the frame of the control panel show the status of the machine.



### Touch Panel/Interface



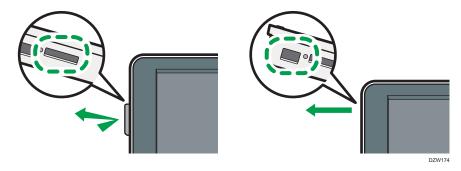
17

3

#### 1. Media slots

Insert an SD card or USB flash memory device. You can store the scanned data or print the file stored on the media.

- Use an SD memory card or SDHC memory card with a maximum capacity of 32 GB. You cannot use an SDXC memory card.
- Use the media formatted in FAT16 or FAT32.
- Certain types of USB flash memory devices cannot be used in the machine.
- A USB extension cable, hub, or card reader cannot be used.
- If the power of the machine is turned off or the media is removed from the machine while the machine is reading the data in the media, check the data in the media.
- Before removing the media from the slot, press the icon displayed on the screen (2)/2) to cancel the connection.



#### 2. Touch Panel

Displays the Home screen, operation screen of applications, and messages. Operate with the fingertips. page 39 "How to Use the Home Screen"

page 41 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"

#### 3. NFC tag

Used to connect the machine and a smart device with the RICOH Smart Device Connector.

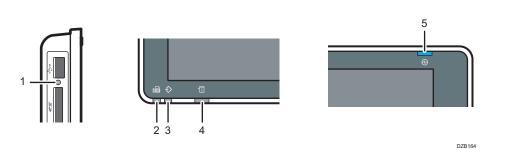
See "Using the Machine Functions from a Mobile Device", User Guide (Full Version).

#### Vote

• You can adjust the angle of the control panel to improve visibility.



### LED Indicators



1

#### 1. Media access indicator

Flashes when data is being read from or written to an SD card

While the machine is accessing the SD card or USB flash memory device, do not turn the power off or remove the media.

#### 2. Fax indicator

Indicates the status of the fax function.

- Flashing: transmitting and receiving data
- Lit: receiving data (Substitute RX File/Memory Lock Reception/Personal Box)

#### 3. Data In indicator

Flashes when the machine is receiving data sent from the printer driver or LAN-Fax driver.

#### 4. Status indicator

Indicates the status of the system. Stays lit when an error occurs or toner runs out. page 219 "Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel"

#### 5. Main power indicator

The main power indicator lights up when you turn on the main power switch. In Sleep mode, it flickers slowly.

## **Order of Option Installation**

When installing multiple options, the following order is recommended:

1. Attach the paper feed unit.

Attach the paper feed unit to the bottom of the machine.

You can attach up to four paper feed units. Up to 2,000 sheets of paper can be loaded.

- 2. Install the caster table.
- Install the optional interface board.
   Install in the slot of the machine.

Only one interface board can be installed.

- 4. Install the file format converter.
- 5. Insert SD card options.

Insert in the SD card slot of the machine.

There are two slots for SD cards.

Each slot supports different types of SD cards.

If you want to use two or more SD cards that can be inserted in the same slot, contact your sales or service representative.

## **Attaching the Paper Feed Unit**

You can install a paper feed unit.

### **WARNING**

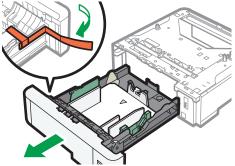
• Do not handle the power cord plug with wet hands. Doing so can result in electric shock.

### **ACAUTION**

- The machine weighs as follows.
  - IM 550F/600F: approximately 29 kg (64 lb.)
  - IM 600SRF: approximately 40 kg (88 lb.)
- When moving the machine, use the inset grips on both sides, and lift slowly in pairs. The machine will break or cause injury if dropped.
- Lifting the paper feed unit carelessly or dropping may cause injury.
- When moving the machine, make sure to unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and confirm that line cords and other connecting cables have been removed. Otherwise, the power cord is damaged, possibly resulting in fire or electric shock.

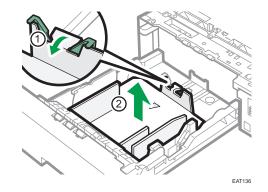
#### 🔁 Important 🔵

- Do not place the machine directly on the floor.
- When attaching multiple options, attach the paper feed unit first.
- To attach two or more paper feed units at the same time, first stack them one upon the other, and then attach them as a single unit.
- Before turning on the power, remove the packaging material from the paper feed unit.
- 1. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 2. Remove the packaging, adhesive tapes, and a plastic sheet from the paper feed unit.



EAT135

1

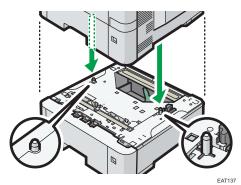


3. Lift the machine using the inset grips on both sides of the machine in pairs.

Lifting the machine requires two people.

When moving the machine, do not touch the following parts:

- The operation panel, the ADF, and parts around them
- Convex parts on the right side of the machine
- Places indicated on the labels attached to the machine
- The bottom of the optional paper tray
- 4. There are two upright pins on the optional paper feed unit. Align them with the holes on the underside of the machine, and then carefully lower the machine.



- 5. Plug in the power cord, and then turn on the machine.
- 6. Print the configuration page to confirm that the unit was attached correctly.

#### Note

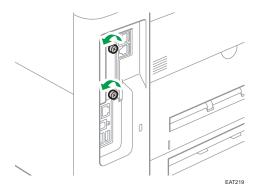
- To check whether the optional paper feed unit was correctly attached, print the configuration page, and check "Attached Equipment" on the configuration page. If the unit was attached correctly, "Tray 2", "Tray 3", "Tray 4", and "Tray 5" will appear.
- See "List / Test Print", User Guide (Full Version).

- If the optional paper feed unit was not installed properly, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If it cannot be installed correctly even after trying the installation a second time, contact your sales or service representative.
- To use the paper feed unit, configure the machine options in "Accessories" in the printer driver.
- See "Specifying the Option Configuration or Paper Settings Manually", User Guide (Full Version).

## Installing the Wireless LAN Interface Board

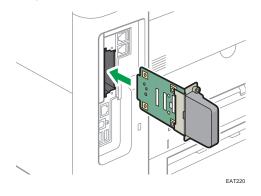
#### C Important

- Before beginning work, ground yourself by touching something metal to discharge any static electricity. Static electricity can damage the interface units.
- Do not subject the Wireless LAN interface board to physical shocks.
- 1. Check the contents of the package.
- 2. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 3. Loosen the two screws and remove the slot cover.



The removed cover will not be reused.

4. Fully insert the interface board.



Check that the interface board is firmly connected to the controller board.

- EX21
- 5. Tighten the two screws to secure the interface board.

- 6. Plug in the power cord, and then turn on the machine.
- 7. Print the configuration page to confirm that the board was attached correctly.

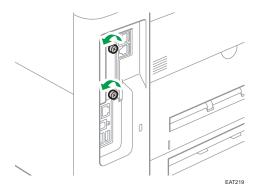
#### Vote

- Check that the board was correctly installed by printing the configuration page. If it is correctly installed, "Wireless LAN" will appear for "Device Connection" on the configuration page.
- See "List / Test Print", User Guide (Full Version).
- If the board was not installed properly, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If it cannot be installed correctly even after trying the installation a second time, contact your sales or service representative.
- Before using the board, you must configure settings from the control panel.
- See "Connecting to a Wireless LAN", User Guide (Full Version).

## Installing the IEEE 1284 Interface Board

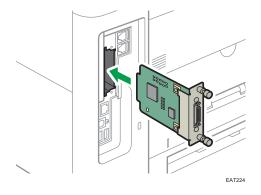
#### C Important

- Before beginning work, ground yourself by touching something metal to discharge any static electricity. Static electricity can damage the interface units.
- Do not subject the IEEE 1284 interface board to physical shocks.
- 1. Check the contents of the package.
- 2. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 3. Loosen the two screws and remove the slot cover.



The removed cover will not be reused.

4. Fully insert the IEEE 1284 interface board.



Check that the IEEE 1284 interface board is firmly connected to the controller board.

- EXT25
- 5. Tighten the two screws to secure the interface board.

- 6. Plug in the power cord, and then turn on the machine.
- 7. Print the configuration page to confirm that the board was attached correctly.

#### Note

- Check that the board was correctly installed by printing the configuration page. If it is correctly installed, "Parallel Interface" will appear for "Device Connection" on the configuration page.
- See "List / Test Print", User Guide (Full Version).
- If the board was not installed properly, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If it cannot be installed correctly even after trying the installation a second time, contact your sales or service representative.

## Installing the Device Server Option

#### 🔁 Important

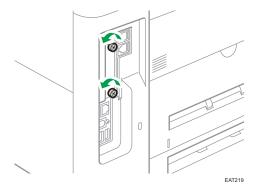
- (mainly North America)
   If you want to use the device server option, contact your service representative.
- Before beginning work, ground yourself by touching something metal to discharge any static electricity. Static electricity can damage the interface units.
- Do not subject the Device Server Option to physical shocks.

The optional device server option is an interface board that adds an Ethernet port to the machine.

With this option installed, two Ethernet cables can be connected at the same time using the standard port on the machine and an additional port on the device server option. You can assign different IP addresses to each port, so the machine can print jobs from different network segments.

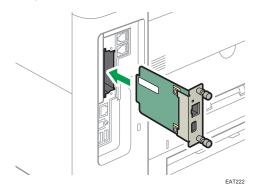
#### Procedure for installing the device server option

- 1. Check the contents of the package.
- 2. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 3. Loosen the two screws and remove the slot cover.



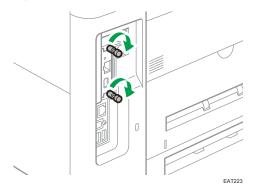
The removed cover will not be reused.

4. Fully insert the interface board.



Check that the interface board is firmly connected to the controller board.

5. Tighten the two screws to secure the interface board.



#### 6. Connect the device server option to the machine.

For details, see the Setup Guide provided with the device server option.

#### **Configuring settings**

After installing and connecting the device server option to the machine, configure the machine settings.

#### 🔿 Important

- When using the device server option, set [Energy Saver Mode to Disable Print Server] to [Disable Mode] to prevent the machine from entering Energy Saver mode. Otherwise, the device server option loses communication with the network while the machine is in Energy Saver mode, and the machine cannot receive print jobs.
- 1. Press [Settings] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Machine Features Settings].



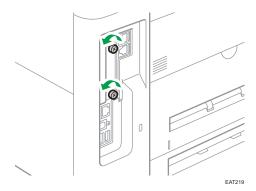
3. Press [System Settings] ▶ the [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Energy Saver Mode to Disable Print Server].

- 4. Press [Disable Mode].
- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🏠).

## Installing the File Format Converter

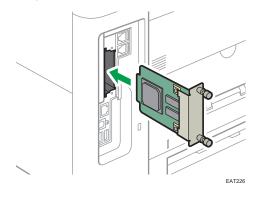
#### 🔁 Important

- Before beginning work, ground yourself by touching something metal to discharge any static electricity. Static electricity can damage the interface units.
- Do not subject the File Format Converter to physical shocks.
- 1. Check the contents of the package.
- 2. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 3. Loosen the two screws and remove the slot cover.

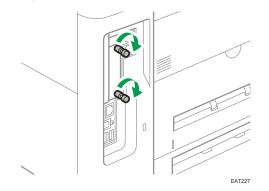


The removed cover will not be reused.

4. Fully insert the file format converter.



Check that the file format converter is firmly connected to the controller board.



5. Tighten two screws to secure the file format converter.

- 6. Plug in the power cord, and then turn on the machine.
- 7. Print the configuration page to confirm that the board was attached correctly.

### Note

• If the board was not installed properly, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If it cannot be installed correctly even after trying the installation a second time, contact your sales or service representative.

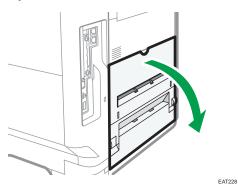
# **Installing SD Card Options**

# 

• Keep SD cards out of reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows an SD card, consult a doctor immediately.

### 🔁 Important 🔵

- Do not subject the card to physical shocks.
- 1. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord.
- 2. Open the rear cover.

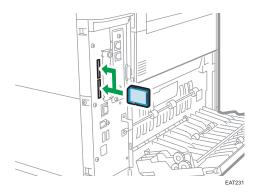


3. Unhook the tab on the interface cover, which is located on the side of the rear cover.



- 4. Unhook the two tabs on the outside of the interface cover.

5. Insert the SD card into the slot until it clicks.

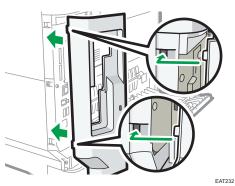


If you insert only one SD card, use the upper slot. If you insert two SD cards simultaneously, use both slots. If you insert the optional VM card, use only the lower slot.

If you want to use two or more SD cards simultaneously, contact your service representative.

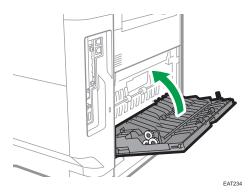
If you use a commercially available SD card for back up the address book, insert the SD card to the lower slot.

6. Hook the two tabs on the outside of the interface cover.



- E TERM
- 7. Hook the tab on the interface cover, which is located on the side of the rear cover.

8. Close the rear cover.



- 9. Plug in the power cord, and then turn on the machine.
- 10. Check that the SD card was installed correctly.

### Vote

- You can confirm that the SD card was installed correctly by checking the control panel menu or configuration page.
  - XPS card/PostScript 3 unit: Printing the configuration page, if the card is installed properly, corresponding option's name will appear for "Printer Language" in "System Reference".
  - See "List / Test Print", User Guide (Full Version).
  - VM card: Extended Feature Settings appears in Machine Features Settings.
  - Fax connection unit: The menu for fax connection will appear in Fax Settings.
  - OCR unit: The menu for OCR will appear in the PDF settings on the Scanner screen.
- If the card is not installed properly, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If it cannot be installed correctly even after trying the installation a second time, contact your sales or service representative.
- Do not touch the card while the machine is in use. It may come loose, even if pushed only slightly. The slot cover must be reattached.

# Changing the Display Language

You can change the language used on the display. English is set as default.

1. On the Home screen, press the change language widget.



2. Select the language you want to display.



3. Press [OK].

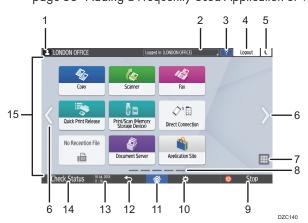
# How to Use the Home Screen

Press [Home] (<sup>(Ch)</sup>) at the bottom center of the screen to display the Home screen on which icons for each function are shown. On the Home screen, you can register frequently used shortcuts and widgets.

• Touch the Home screen to operate it.

page 41 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"

• You can add or delete icons and widgets, and change their order. page 55 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"



### 1. Login icon

This icon is displayed when users are logged in. When you press the icon, the names of the users who are currently logged in are displayed.

### 2. System message

Displays system and application messages. If there are two or more messages, they will be displayed alternately.

If a message indicating that the toner has run out or an error has occurred is displayed, press the message to display the system message list to check the contents.

Machine Administrator	Logged in: Machine Administrator	Logout 🕻
i System Message		×
Logged in: Machine Administrato		
Check Status 18.34.2018 5		💿 Stop

3. Help 🌅

This icon is displayed when Help is available for the displayed screen or errors occurring when the machine is connected to the Internet.

Specify [Cookie] in the control panel browser to [ON] to display Help properly.

See "Browser Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

### 4. [Login]/[Logout]

These keys are displayed when user authentication is enabled. Press the keys to log in to or log out from the machine.

page 62 "Logging In from the Control Panel"

### 5. [Energy Save]

Press to enter or exit Sleep mode or Low Power mode.

page 10 "Energy Saving Mode"

### 6. Switch Screens <>

Press to scroll the screens right and left. The Home screen has 5 screens.



You can switch between the screens by flicking.

page 41 "Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips"

### 7. Application list 💷

Press to display applications that are not displayed on the Home screen. page 55 "Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen"

### 8. Current display position

Shows which of the five screens is currently displayed.

### 9. [Stop]

Press to stop scanning or printing.

You can change the setting to stop only a job in progress with [Stop Key to Suspend Print Job].

See "Administrator Tools (System Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

### 10. [Menu] 🌣

Displayed if a menu is available in the currently selected application.

On the Home screen, press to restore the icons to their factory default positions.

### 11. [Home] 祄

Press to display the Home screen.

### 12. [Return] ᠫ

Press to return to the previous screen.

### 13. Date/Time and Toner remaining

The current date and time is displayed.

To display the information about Toner remaining, specify [Display Time/Remaining Toner] to [Remaining Toner] of [Screen Features Settings] ► [Screen Device Settings] ► [System Bar Settings (Top / Bottom of Screen)].

### 14. [Check Status]

Press to check the following system statuses of the machine. This lights up in red when an error occurs.

• Machine's status

Indicates the error status and network status.

• Operational status of each function

Status of functions such as Copy or Scanner

- Current jobs
- Job history
- Machine's maintenance information

# See "Checking the Machine Status from the Control Panel", User Guide (Full Version).

#### 15. Icon display area

Displays the icons and widgets.

### 🕹 Note

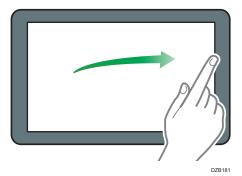
- You can change the screen displayed when the power is turned on under [Function Priority].
- See "Displaying Frequently Used Functions on the First Screen", User Guide (Full Version).
- When you press [Menu] ► [Reset Home Screen] with the Embedded Software Architecture application being installed in the machine, the application icons are not deleted.

# Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips

On the Home screen or application screen, you can perform the following operations by touching the screen with your fingertips.

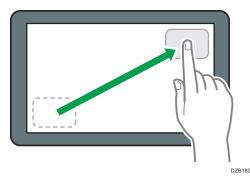
#### Flick (for switching between screens)

Touch and slide your finger on the screen quickly left or right to switch between the screens.



### Drag (for moving an icon)

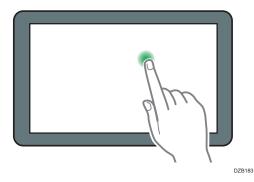
Press and hold an icon, and then slide your finger while pressing on the screen to move the icon.



### Long tap (for displaying the available menu screen)

Press and hold on a blank area on the screen to display the menu screen.

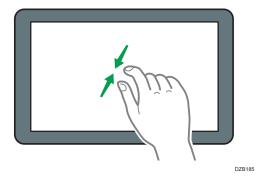
On the Home screen you can add a folder or change the wallpaper from the menu.



In some applications, you can also use the following actions to operate the screen:

### Pinch-in (for zooming out the screen)

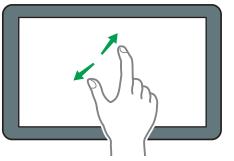
Touch the screen with your thumb and forefinger, and pinch them together. This feature is useful when previewing files and images.



1

# Pinch-out (for zooming in the screen)

Touch the screen with your thumb and forefinger, and spread them apart. You can also zoom in the screen by tapping the screen twice quickly. When you quickly tap the screen twice again, the screen returns to full display. This feature is useful when previewing files and images.



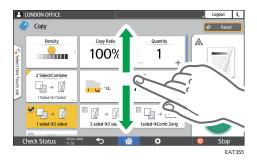
DZB184

# How to Use the Copy Screen

You can select from one of two types for the Copy screen.

### Standard View (factory-default)

The basic functions that are used frequently are displayed with big keys. Scroll down the screen to see the keys used to configure the functions for finishing or editing.



### **Full View**

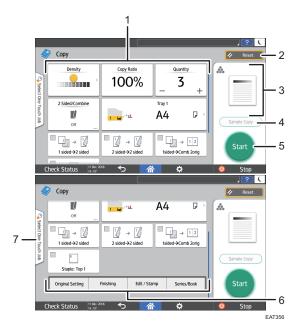
You can see all the function keys on a single screen. You do not need to scroll through the screens to select a function.



- To switch the screen type, press [Menu] (♥) ► [Screen Settings] ► [Switch Screen Type], and then select [Standard View] or [Full View] on the Copy screen.
- You can use the same functions on either screen.
- When the administrator has configured user authentication and User's Own Customization is enabled, each login user can change the screen type.

# How to Use the Copy Screen (Standard View)

You can customize the layout and how the keys are displayed on the Copy screen in Standard View. page 47 "Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function"



### 1. Copy function keys

Press a key to select the function to assign to the key. Flick up and down on the screen to display the keys out of the visible area. The keys with assigned functions are displayed in yellow or with an the upper left corner. Depending on the assigned function, the display of the key changes according to the specified setting.

### 2. [Reset]

Reset the settings configured on the Copy screen.

### 3. Preview of the current setting status

Displays an image representing the settings configured on the Copy screen. Press the image to display the list of the settings.

ettings List		Clos	ie .
General Settings			_
<ul> <li>Copy Ratio</li> <li>100%</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Quantity</li> <li>1</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Paper Tray Tray 1</li> </ul>			
Original Setting			
Density     Auto	<ul> <li>Original Size</li> <li>Auto</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Original Type Text</li> </ul>	SADF     Off		

### 4. [Sample Copy]

Press to make a partial copy as a test before proceeding to copy the rest of the original.

See "Making a Partial Copy as a Test and Copying the Rest of the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

5. [Start]

Press to perform copying.

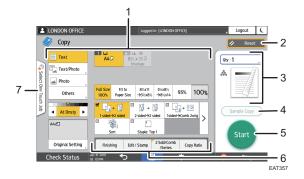
### 6. Other keys for Copy function

Press to select the functions whose keys are out of the visible area of the screen. The key of the function that is currently configured is displayed with 📶 in the upper left corner.

### 7. Select One Touch Job

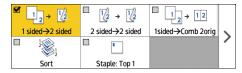
You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is configured, display the history of the executed jobs for each login user. When selecting a job history, its settings are displayed on the current Copy screen. You can use the same settings as a previous job by selecting the job history.

# How to Use the Copy Screen (Full View)



#### 1. Copy function keys

Press a key to select the function to assign to the key. The keys with assigned functions are displayed in yellow. To see the display area in the illustration below, press > or flick to the left or right.



#### 2. [Reset]

Reset the settings configured on the Copy screen.

### 3. Preview of the current setting status

Displays an image representing the quantity and the settings configured on the Copy screen. Press [Quantity] to display the number keys. Press the image to display the list of the settings.

### 4. [Sample Copy]

Press to make a partial copy as a test before proceeding to copy the rest of the original.

See "Making a Partial Copy as a Test and Copying the Rest of the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

### 5. [Start]

Press to perform copying.

### 6. Other keys for Copy function

Press to select the functions whose keys are out of the visible area of the screen. The key of the function that is currently configured is displayed with *i* in the upper left corner.

### 7. Select One Touch Job

You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is configured, display the history of the executed jobs for each authenticated user. When selecting a job history, its settings are displayed on the current Copy screen. You can use the same settings as a previous job by selecting the job history.

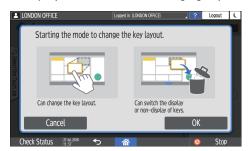
# Changing the Layout or Display of the Keys of the Copy Function

You can customize the layout and how the Copy function keys are displayed on the Copy screen in Standard View mode (Arranging keys mode).

When the administrator has configured user authentication and User's Own Customization is enabled, each login user can customize the layout.

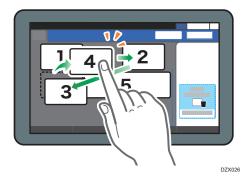
### Switching to change the key layout mode

On the Copy screen, press and hold one of the keys until the screen changes, and then press [OK] to display the screen of the arranging keys mode.



### Changing the key layout

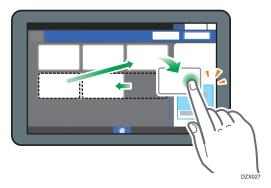
Press and hold the key to move, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



You can also display the screen of the arranging keys mode by pressing [Menu] (☎) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Change Key Layout].

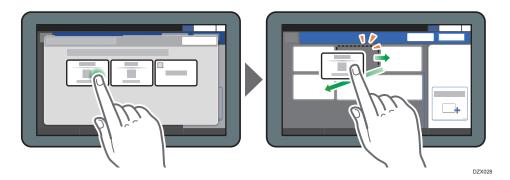
### Hiding a key

Press and hold the key to hide, drag it to "Hide the Keys", and then press [OK].



### Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



### Confirming the initial placement of the keys

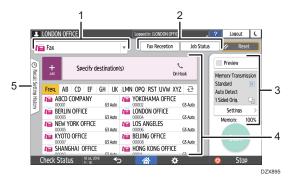
Press [Menu] ( ) [Screen Settings] [Temporarily Restore Initial Key Layout] on the Copy screen. After confirming, press [Back].

### Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] (♥) ► [Screen Settings] ► [Restore Initial Key Layout] ► [Restore] on the Copy screen.

# How to Use the Fax Screen

There are five kinds of functions and settings on the Fax screen.



### 1. Destination type selection

Switch the destination type between [Fax] (including IP-Fax) and [Internet Fax]. The items displayed in the address book and destination entry screen for manual entry change also when you switch the destination type.

#### 2. Transmission/reception information confirmation

Browse and print the received documents that are stored in the memory or on the hard disk drive of the machine. You can also browse and print the transmission and reception history.

### 3. Transmission settings

You can specify the additional features to use when sending a fax, configure the scan settings appropriately for the original to scan, and display a preview before sending the fax. You can also check the settings that are currently specified and the remaining amount of memory.

#### 4. Destination specification

You can select an address registered in the address book through one-touch operation. Press it to specify a destination by using various other methods such as by entering manually or selecting from the history. You can also register a new destination in the address book.

### 5. Job history

Job history of the executed jobs is displayed. When user authentication is set, the job history of each authenticated user is displayed. When you select a job history, the setting will be applied on the current Fax screen. This feature is convenient when you are using the same setting repeatedly.

# Customizing the [Settings] Screen

Press and hold a key on the [Settings] screen to customize the layout of the keys.

When the administrator has enabled user authentication and User's Own Customization, the screen can be customized for each user.

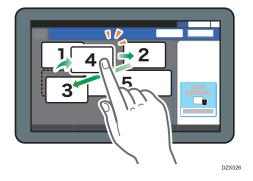
### Switching to change the key layout mode

Long-press any key and press [OK] on the screen below to switch to the key sorting mode and enable changing of the key layout.

LONDON OFFICE	Logged in: [LONDON OFFICE]	(
Starting the mode to char	nge the key layout.	μ
Can change the key layout.	Can switch the display or non-display of keys.	Ĺ
Cancel	ОК	
Check Status 27 Ad. 2018 5:57	Stop	

### Changing the key layout

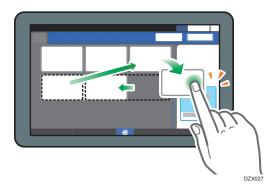
Long-press a key to change the layout, drag it to a new location, and then press [OK].



You can also display the screen of the arranging keys mode by pressing [Menu] (♥) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Change Key Layout].

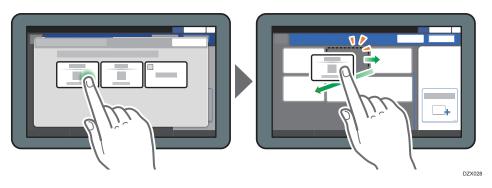
### Hiding a key

Long-press a key to hide, drag it to [Hide the Keys], and then press [OK].



### Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



### Confirming the initial placement of the keys

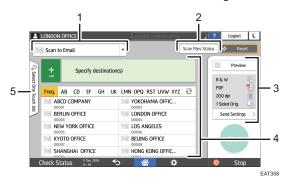
Press [Menu] ( ) [Change Key Layout] [Check the key layout of the factory defaults] on the Fax screen. After confirming, press [Back].

### Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] ( ▶ [Change Key Layout] ▶ [Reset Layout] ▶ [Restore] on the Fax screen.

# How to Use the Scanner Screen

There are five kinds of functions and settings on the Scanner screen.



#### 1. Destination type selection

You can switch between [Scan to Email] and [Scan to Folder]. The items displayed in the address book and destination entry screen for manual entry also change when you switch the destination type.

#### 2. Scan Files Status

You can browse the transmission history of the sent documents and cancel sending of a document waiting in the queue. The transmission file status may not be displayed depending on the security settings.

### 3. Transmission settings

You can specify the scan settings according to the type of document to scan and the purpose of the scanned data, and display a preview before sending the data.

### 4. Destination specification

You can select a destination registered in the address book through one-touch operation. Press to specify a destination by using various other methods such as by entering manually or selecting from the history. You can also register a new destination in the address book.

### 5. Select One Touch Job

You can see the preset settings in the machine or the job history. When user authentication is set, the job history of each authenticated user is displayed. When you select a job history, the setting will be applied on the current Scanner screen. This feature is convenient when you are using the same setting repeatedly.

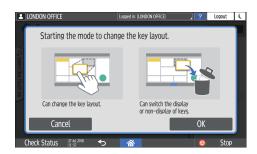
### Customizing the [Send Settings] Screen

Press and hold a key on the [Send Settings] screen to customize the layout of the keys.

When the administrator has enabled user authentication and User's Own Customization, the screen can be customized for each user.

### Switching to change the key layout mode

Long-press any key and press [OK] on the screen below to switch to the key sorting mode and enable changing of the key layout.



### Changing the key layout

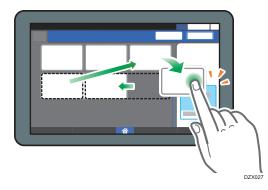
Long-press a key to change the layout, drag it to a new location, and then press [OK].



You can also display the screen of the arranging keys mode by pressing [Menu] (♥) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Change Key Layout].

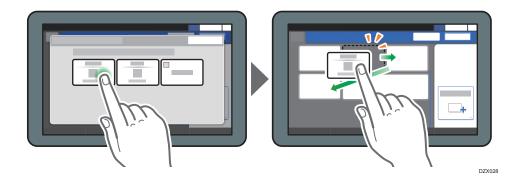
### Hiding a key

Long-press a key to hide, drag it to [Hide the Keys], and then press [OK].



### Displaying a hidden key

Press "Hidden Key List" to display the hidden keys. Press and hold the key to display, drag it to the location to display, and then press [OK].



# Confirming the initial placement of the keys

Press [Menu] (♥) ► [Change Key Layout] ► [Check the key layout of the factory defaults] on the Scanner screen. After confirming, press [Back].

# Resetting the key layout to the default

Press [Menu] ( ▶ [Change Key Layout] ▶ [Reset Layout] ▶ [Restore] on the Scanner screen.

# Adding a Frequently Used Application or Widget to the Home Screen

You can use a frequently used icon or widget easily by adding it to the Home screen. You can organize the icons on the Home screen as you like by changing their order or using folders.

- Add an icon or widget from the application list screen.
- Each page of the Home screen can display up to 12 icons, widgets or folders, for a total of 60 items. A folder can hold up to 80 icons.
- You can add the following items to the Home screen: shortcuts of bookmarks in the browser on the screen and programs registered in the Copy, Fax or Scanner.



### Vote

- You cannot add a shortcut of a program registered by the document server function to the Home screen.
- When you have set user authentication, log in and customize it. Each user can register their own Home screen.
- A shortcut, folder, or widget cannot be created or moved if there is no space on the Home screen. In this case, delete one of the registered items, and then perform the same operation.
- The names of icons and widgets are displayed up to 20 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters. Names composed of 21 or more double-byte characters are displayed with "...", indicating the 20th and later characters.

# Adding an Icon/Widget to the Home Screen

1. Press the application list icon on the Home screen.



2. Press and hold the icon or widget to be added to the application list screen.



- Select the [Widget] tab to add a widget, or select the [Program] tab to add a program.
- 3. After the screen changes to the Home screen, move the icon or widget to the desired position and release it.

To add a classic application or program, select the type of application or program from the displayed menu.



# Moving or Deleting Icons and Widgets

To move an icon or widget, press and hold the icon and move it to the desired position, and then
release it.

- To delete an icon or widget, press and hold the icon and move it to the trash icon, and then release it.
- When you delete a shortcut icon of a function or program from the Home screen, the function or program is not deleted.
- To reset the Home screen, perform the following procedure.
- 1. Press [Menu] (🍄) on the bottom center of the Home screen.
- 2. Press [Reset Home Screen].
- 3. Press [OK] in the displayed message.

### **Creating a Folder to Organize Icons**

- 1. Press and hold a spot on the Home screen where you want to create a folder.
- 2. When the "Add to Home Screen" screen is displayed, press [Folder].



- 3. Open the created folder, press and hold its title, and then change the folder name. You can enter up to 30 characters for a folder name.
- 4. Drag the icon and release it over the folder.

# Registering Frequently Used Settings as a Program

You can register a "program" made of a combination of the functions used in the Copy, Fax, or Scanner, such as the scan setting, output setting, and address.

• You can load the registered program easily from the application screen.



- When you press the icon of a program on the Home screen, the machine applies the settings and performs the function registered in the program automatically.
- You can register the following number of items as programs.
  - Copy: 25 items
  - Fax: 100 items
  - Scanner: 100 items

### Vote

- You cannot register the following settings as a program:
  - Copy

[Orientation] of [2 Sided/Combine]

• Fax

[Subject], [Sender]

• Scanner

[Sender], [PDF Security Settings], [Start Number]

- You can register a destination on the program of the scanner function only when [Program Setting for Destinations] of [Scanner Settings] is set to [Include Destinations].
- See "General Settings (Scanner Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
- When [Program Setting for Destinations] of [Scanner Settings] is set to [Exclude Destinations], the destination registered on the recalled program in the scanner function is not displayed.
- A folder destination with a destination protection code cannot be registered on a program of the scanner function.

# **Registering Settings as a Program**

First, configure the settings to be registered on the Copy, Fax, or Scanner screen, and then register them.

1. On the Home screen, press [Copy], [Fax], or [Scanner].



2. Specify scan and output settings to be registered as a program.



- 3. Press [Menu] ( 🌣 ).
- 4. Press [Set Current Settings to Program].



5. Press a program number to register the settings.



- 6. Enter a program name and select an icon, and then press [OK].
- 7. Press [Place].

The selected icon is displayed on the Home screen.



8. Press [Exit].

# Changing the Contents of the Program

You can change a part of the program and overwrite it or change the contents and register them as a new program.

1. On the Home screen, press [Copy], [Fax], or [Scanner].



2. Press [Menu] (🔯), and then press [Recall Program].



3. Press the program number to be changed.



4. Change the scan and output settings.



5. Press [Menu] ( ), and then press [Set Current Settings to Program].

6. Select a program number to register the changed settings.



- To overwrite the program, select the number of the loaded program.
- To register the contents as a new program, select a number that is not programmed.
- 7. Press [Program] in the displayed message.
- 8. Enter a program name and select an icon.
- 9. Press [OK].
- 10. Press [Place].
- 11. Press [Exit].



 To change the icon or program name or to delete the program, press [Menu] ( ) and operate from [Edit / Delete program]. 1

# Logging In from the Control Panel

When the machine is configured by the administrator to restrict use by unauthorized users, you must authenticate your login information before starting the operation.

The authentication methods are described below.

 When Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is configured on the machine, enter the user name and password for authentication to log in to the machine before starting operation.

	? La	gin 🕻
Login		×
Enter user name and password to log in.		
User Name	Login	
Password	Login	
Canguage Change Language		
Check Status 2018/09/30 5	Ø	Stop

• Depending on the machine settings, you can use an IC card or mobile device for authentication.



• If user code authentication is specified, you may need to enter the user code to operate the restricted application.



To prevent use of the machine by an unauthorized person, always log out when you have finished using the machine.

While a user is logged in, the name of the user is displayed in the system message.

### • Note

- If the machine is not used for a specified period, the user is automatically logged out (Auto Logout). The default setting for Auto Logout is 3 minutes. The period of Auto Logout can be changed by [Auto Logout Timer] of [System Settings] or the Auto Logout setting can be disabled.
- See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- Ask the administrator for the login user name, login password, and user code.

# Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password

Enter the authentication information using the keyboard displayed on the control panel.

Corr Corr Corr Corr Corr Corr Storage Device No Reception File Document Server Check Status

1. Press [Login] at the top right on the screen.

2. Press [User Name].



- 3. Enter the login user name, and then press [Done].
- 4. Press [Password].
- 5. Enter the login password, and then press [Done].
- 6. Press [Login].

Vote

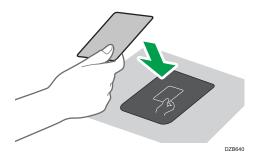
 If an incorrect password is entered a specified number of times, login with the same name is disabled (Lockout Function). The default setting for unsuccessful attempts before a user is locked out is five. If the user is locked out, the administrator must release the lockout. • To log out from the machine, press [Logout] at the top right on the screen, and then press [OK].



# Logging In Using an IC Card

Hold an IC card over the card reader on the right side of the machine. If the card is not registered on the machine, enter the authentication information and register the card.

1. Hold an IC card over the card reader.



- When the card is registered on the machine, login operation finishes.
- When the card is not registered, the registration screen is displayed. Proceed to the next step to register the card.
- 2. Enter the Login User Name and Login Password, and then press [Register].
- 3. Hold the IC card over the card reader again.

#### Note

- To log out, hold the IC card over the card reader or press [Logout] at the top right on the screen.
- If another user holds the IC card over the card reader while you are still logged in, you are automatically logged out and the new user logs in.

# Logging In Using a Mobile Device

Log in to the machine using the RICOH Smart Device Connector app on your mobile device. You need a mobile device that supports Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE).

- 1. Enable the Bluetooth function on your mobile device.
- 2. Start the RICOH Smart Device Connector application on the mobile device, and then flick left or right to display the login screen.



3. Press [NEXT].

4. Display the login screen on the control panel of the machine, and hold the mobile device over the Bluetooth label.

	?	Login (
To log in hold your smart device over the operation panel.		8
Login Using Keyboard >		
Englange Change Language		
Check Status 🚓 😚 🏠 🏠	0	Stop

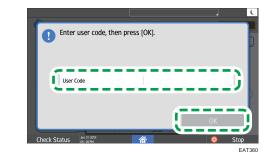
```
Vote
```

- To log out from the machine, hold the mobile device over the Bluetooth label on the control panel or press [Logout] at the top right on the screen.
- If another user holds a mobile device over the card reader while you are still logged in, you are automatically logged out and the new user logs in.

### Authenticating Using the User Code

When User Code Authentication is specified as the authentication method on the machine, enter the user code before operating an application.

1. Enter the user code, and then press [OK].



Note

• When you finish the operation of the application, press [Energy Save] (C) or press and hold [Reset] to release the authentication status.

### **Changing the Login Password**

When Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is configured on the machine, change the password periodically to prevent use of the machine by an unauthorized person.

Passwords can contain the following characters. Make the password difficult to guess.

- Uppercase letters: A to Z (26 characters)
- Lowercase letters: a to z (26 characters)
- Numbers: 0 to 9 (10 characters)
- Symbols: (space) ! " # \$ % & ' () \* + , . / : ; < => ? @ [ \ ] ^ ` (33 characters)

### Changing the login password using the control panel

- 1. Log in to the machine.
- 2. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



3. Select the login user from the address book, and then press [Edit].

Address Book	Q Search	Exit
View All	Sort by DispL Priority	00 🚓 Register
ABCD COMPANY	YOKOHAMA OFFICE	222, Create Group
BERLIN OFFICE		Edit
NEW YORK OFFICE	LOS ANGELES 00006 in series	Detete
KYOTO OFFICE 00007 i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	BEIJING OFFICE 00008 i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i	
SHANGHAI OFFICE	HONG KONG OFFICE	J
27 Jul. 2018 15 : 36		

4. Press the [User Management / Others] tab ▶ [User Management].



5. Enter the new login password, and then press [OK].



You can enter up to 128 characters.

- 6. Press [OK].
- 7. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🟠).

You can change the login password in Web Image Monitor.

See "Changing the Login Password Using Web Image Monitor", User Guide (Full Version).

# Placing an Original on the Exposure Glass

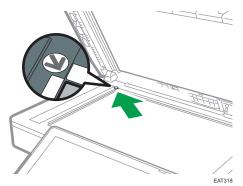
Use the exposure glass to scan originals that cannot be placed in the auto document feeder (ADF), such as books and license cards.



• When lowering the ADF, do not place your hands on the hinges and exposure glass. Your hands or fingers are caught, which can result in injury.

🔁 Important

- Do not lift the ADF forcefully. The cover of the ADF might open and cause injury. The ADF, or its hinges may also become damaged.
- 1. Lift the ADF.
- 2. Place the original face down and aligned to the mark on the upper left corner of the scan area.



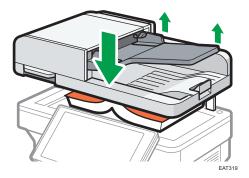
page 202 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"

3. Lower the ADF.

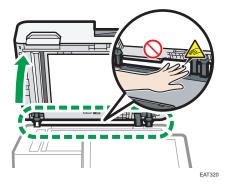


• When you place a thick book or three-dimensional original on the exposure glass and lower the ADF, the back side of the ADF rises up to accommodate the original.

1



• Do not open or close the ADF with your hands placed in the space between the ADF and exposure glass.



- The machine cannot detect the size of the original automatically. Specify the original size.
- See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

# Placing an Original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF)

The ADF automatically scans multiple sheets of originals or two-sided originals at one time.

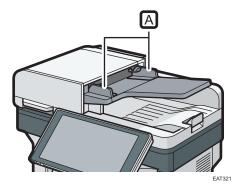
## 🔂 Important

- Once originals start to feed in, do not push or pull them.
- Do not mix different size originals.
- For details about the sizes of originals that you can place in the ADF, see the following: page 202 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"
- If the originals described below are placed in the ADF, it may cause misfeeds, white lines, or black lines, or result in damage to the originals. Place these originals on the exposure glass.
  - Stapled or clipped originals
  - Perforated or torn originals
  - Curled, folded, or creased originals
  - Pasted originals
  - Originals with adhesive tape, glue or paste stuck to them
  - Originals with any kind of coating, such as thermal paper, art paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or conductive paper
  - Originals with perforated lines
  - Originals with indexes, tags, or other projecting parts
  - Sticky originals such as translucent paper
  - Thin or highly flexible originals
  - Thick originals such as postcards
  - Bound originals such as books
  - Transparent originals such as transparencies or translucent paper

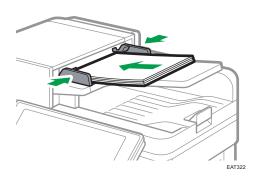
See "Printing Documents in Order of Priority", User Guide (Full Version).

- When loading an original written by pencil on the ADF, the original may be dirty from by being scraped.
- Correct an original that tends to curl before setting on the machine.
- Take care so that multiple originals do not stick to each other and are not fed at once.
- Do not set an original that is wet with correcting fluid or ink. The scanning glass will be stained and the stain will be scanned with the original.
- Do not open the ADF's cover until the scanned originals are ejected into the original output tray. Doing so may cause a malfunction.

- If you push originals into the ADF, a paper jam may occur. If a paper jam occurs, open the cover of the ADF and reduce the number of original pages that you place on the ADF. Alternatively, open the cover of the ADF and place the originals but do not push them forcibly.
- 1. Adjust the original guide 🛽 to the original size.

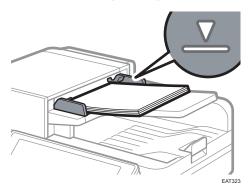


2. Place the aligned originals squarely face up in the ADF. Place the originals with the first page facing up.



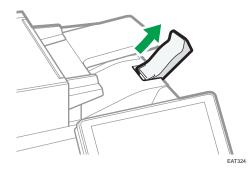
Fan sheets before loading so that multiple papers do not stick to each other and are not fed at once.

Do not stack the originals beyond the limit mark.





To scan originals larger than A4D or 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, pull out the ADF's extender on the original output tray.



- The machine cannot detect the size of the original automatically. Specify the original size.
- See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

1. Getting Started

# **Basic Procedure for Copying Documents**

Set the original on the exposure glass or in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) to make a copy.

## 🔁 Important

- If the previous setting is still active, press [Reset] before copying.
- 1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. On the Copy screen, press [Original Size].



If the key is not displayed, select it from [Original Setting].

4. Specify the original size.

The size of originals can be specified by the following three methods:

• Using the paper tray settings

When [Use Paper Tray Settings] is selected, the machine scans the originals based on the size of the paper loaded in the selected tray.

• Selecting regular sizes

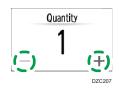
The user selects the size of the originals from the regular sizes.

• Specifying custom sizes

The user specifies both the horizontal and vertical size of the originals.

See "Copying a Custom Size Original", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Press [<sup>+</sup>] or [<sup>-</sup>] in [Quantity] to specify the number of copies.



You can enter this using the keyboard after pressing [Quantity] or a number.

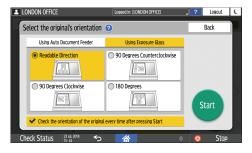
6. Press the key for selecting a paper tray and specify the paper to use.



• If you do not want to use other trays when paper runs out, set the machine so it does not automatically select other trays.

See "Tray Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

- To prevent the machine from selecting other trays automatically, disable auto tray switching.
   See "General Features (Copier/Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
- 7. Press [Start].
  - When the [Check the orientation of the original every time after pressing Start] check box is selected in [Select the original's orientation], and 2-sided, staple, or a function in [Edit / Stamp] is specified, the screen below appears. Select the original orientation as necessary. If you do not need to select this each time, clear the check box.



- When you place the original in the ADF, the process of copying the original starts.
- When you place the original on the exposure glass, the copy process starts according to the setting contents. To make a copy of the second page or back side of the original, place the original accordingly on the exposure glass, and then press [Start]. Press [Finish Scn] after scanning all originals if necessary according to the setting contents.
- Originals scanned when no paper is loaded or when an error has occurred will be copied automatically when the machine is ready to execute copying.

## Vote

• The machine cannot detect the size of the original automatically.

# **Making Enlarged or Reduced Copies**

You can enlarge or reduce the original when copying with the following methods:

- Enlarging or reducing at a specified reduction ratio or into a specified size (Zoom/Reduce/ Enlarge/Size Magnification)
- Enlarging or reducing according to the paper size (Auto Reduce/Enlarge)
- Reducing slightly (Create Margin)

# Specifying a Copy Ratio or Size

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



#### 2. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

The base point of reduce/enlarge is different for the exposure glass and Auto Document Feeder (ADF) as shown in the following table:

Setting position	Base point	Enlarge	Reduce
Exposure glass	Enlarged or reduced from the top left.		R
Auto Document Feeder (ADF)	Enlarged or reduced from the bottom left	JEE24	DZB225

When you set a 2-sided original in the ADF, the top right corner of the original will be the base point for the enlargement/reduction of the reverse side. To enlarge or reduce from the same point, set the original on the exposure glass and perform 2-sided copy.

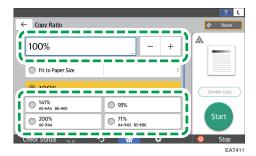
3. Press [Copy Ratio] and select a copy ratio or size.



To specify a copy ratio or size other than the displayed setting, press [Others] and perform the following procedure.

#### Specifying a copy ratio (Zoom/Reduce/Enlarge)

Enter a value or select the copy ratio.



# Specifying a size (Size Magnification)

Press [Specify Copy Size] and enter the length of the original and copied image.



#### 4. Press [Start].



You can change the copy ratio options that appear when you press [Copy Ratio] on the Copy screen. You can also change the enlargement and reduction ratios that appear when you press [Copy Ratio] ▶ [Others] on the Copy screen.

🗳 Сору			? (
2 Sided/Combine or sided-92 sided	100%           Fit to           71%         A4→A5 B5→B6           141%         A5→A4 B6→B5           93%	$\begin{array}{c} \hline \textbf{Quantity} \\ \hline \textbf{1} \\ \textbf{-} \\ \textbf{+} \\ \textbf{y}^{1} \\ \textbf{.4} \\ \hline \textbf{-} \\ \textbf{-} $	Sample Copy
Check Status 19 Dec. 3 10:40	<sup>ws</sup> 5 🗥	¢ 🗘	Stop EAT412

• See "Reproduction Ratio", User Guide (Full Version).

# Enlarging or Reducing According to the Paper Size

The original is enlarged or reduced to fit on the specified paper size (Scale to Paper Size)



1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

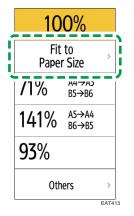
3. On the Copy screen, press [Original Size].



If the key is not displayed, select it from [Original Setting].

4. Specify the original size.

5. On the Copy screen, press [Copy Ratio] and [Fit to Paper Size].



6. Select the tray loaded with the paper to use.



When the orientations of the original and paper in the paper tray do not match, the machine rotates the copied image automatically. To reduce an original of A4  $(8^1/_2 \times 11)$  size to A5  $(5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2)$  size, for example, you can select either A5  $(5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2)\square$  or A5  $(5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2)\square$ .



7. Press [Start].

# Reducing Slightly to Increase the Margins

The original is reduced to 93% in size and printed in the center of the paper. This setting is useful when you want to increase margins on a copy or to copy an original in full size onto paper of the same size without the edges being slightly cropped.

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



## 2. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. On the Copy screen, press [Create Margin].



[Create Margin] is not displayed in the default setting. Change the setting in [Copier / Document Server Settings] ▶ the [General Features] tab ▶ [Customize Function: Copy (Standard Mode)] or [Customize Function: Copy (All View Mode)] to display the key.

See "General Features (Copier/Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Start].

# • Note

- You can change the copy ratio of [Create Margin] to a value other than 93%.
- See "Reproduction Ratio", User Guide (Full Version).

# **Duplex Copying**

You can copy two 1-sided pages or one 2-sided page onto the front and back sides of a single sheet of paper.

	+	
 —		DZB251

The size of the original that can be copied differs from that of the 1-sided copy.

page 202 "Recommended Original Size and Weight"

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



- 2. Press [1 sided  $\rightarrow$  2 sided] or [2 sided  $\rightarrow$  2 sided] on the Copy screen.
  - 1 sided→2 sided



• 2 sided→2 sided



Duplex Copying with the Settings Other Than Those Displayed on the Keys

1. Press [2 Sided/Combine].



2. Specify the original and print side settings.

LONDON OFFICE		Logged in: [LONDON OFFICE]	.?	Logout
	-			UK
Original Direction				
	$\rightarrow$	1 2	Combin	ne Settings
Original Setting		Print Side Setting	Off	1
1 Sided		1 Sided	2 Page	25 1 2
Open to Right/Left		Open to Right/Left	4 Page	es
Open to Top		Open to Top	8 Page	es 🔛
Check Status	_			Stop

- Original Direction: Specify the orientation to place the originals.
- Original Setting: Specify the condition of the originals to copy (1 sided/2 sided (page opening direction)).
- Print Side Setting: Select the finish from [Open to Right/Left] or [Open to Top].
- 3. Press [OK].
- 3. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Start].

When placing the originals on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scn] after scanning all of the originals if necessary according to the setting contents and number of originals.

#### 🕹 Note

- You can specify the margins when copying a 1-sided original onto both sides of paper.
- See "Edit", User Guide (Full Version).
- You cannot perform Duplex Copy onto the following paper types:
  - Label paper (adhesive labels)
  - Transparency
  - Envelopes
- You can change the setting contents of the two-sided copy key on the Copy screen.
- See "General Features (Copier/Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
- Use the [Series] function to copy the front and back sides of a two-sided original onto one side of a sheet page by page.
- See "Copying Facing Pages of a Book Type Original or Two-sided Original", User Guide (Full Version).

# Combining and Copying a Multi-page Original onto a Single Sheet of Paper

You can copy multiple sheets in an original onto one side or both sides of a sheet of paper to save paper.



The arrangement of copied pages and copy ratio varies depending on the original orientation and combined pages.

Original Orientation	Combine 2 pages	Combine 4 pages	Combine 8 pages
DZB254	- <b>O</b> -	DZ8257	DZE259
 DZB255	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	DZE260	0 260 025281

1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. On the Copy screen, press [1sided→Comb 2orig].



#### To combine with the settings other than those displayed on the keys

1. Press [2 Sided/Combine].

2 Sided/Combine	
L.	
Off	

2. Specify about the original, print side, and combining.

2 Sided/Combine			? ( OK
Original Direction	$\rightarrow$ $1/2$	Combine !	Settings
Original Setting	Print Side Setting	Off	1
I Sided	1 Sided	2 Pages	1 2
Open to Right/Left	Open to Right/Left	4 Pages	12
Open to Top	Open to Top	8 Pages	1
Check Status	Å ¢	0	Stop

- Original Direction: Specify the orientation to place the originals.
- Original Setting: Specify the condition of the originals to copy (1 sided/2 sided (page opening direction)).
- Print Side Setting: Specify the condition of the copied sheet (1 sided/2 sided (page opening direction)).
- Combine Settings: Specify the number of pages to combine on one side of a sheet.
- 3. Press the key for selecting a paper tray and specify the paper to use.

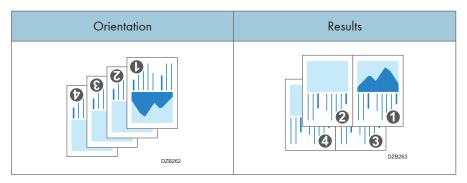


4. Place an original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

To position the right page first and then the left page when copying an original that reads from right to left, place the original upside down in the ADF.

#### Example: Combining 2 Pages



## 5. Press [Start].

When placing the originals on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scn] after scanning all of the originals if necessary according to the number of originals.

## Vote

- The minimum copy ratio in the Combine function is 25%. For example, if you copy an A4 (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11)-size original onto A5 (5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>)-size paper with [1sided→Comb 4orig], the copy ratio becomes less than 25% and parts of the image might not be copied.
- You can configure the following settings in the [Edit] screen:
  - [Erase Original Shadow in Combine]: Determine whether to erase the boundary margin around each original to maintain the margin.
  - [Copy Order in Combine]: Specify the order of combined images.
  - [Separation Line in Combine]: Set whether to draw a separation line between combined pages.
- See "Edit", User Guide (Full Version).
- You can change the setting contents of the Combine key on the Copy screen.
- See "General Features (Copier/Document Server Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

# **Copying Onto Envelopes**

To copy onto envelopes that are not usually used, set them in the bypass tray. If you copy onto envelopes frequently, set them in the paper tray.

# Copying Onto Envelopes in the Bypass Tray



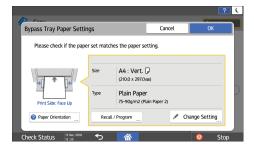
- The Duplex Copy function cannot be used for envelopes. If Duplex Copy is specified, press the key to cancel the setting.
- 1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Set the envelope in the bypass tray with the copying side face up.

page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

The "Bypass Tray Paper Settings" screen is displayed.

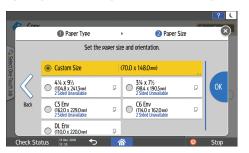


- 3. Press [Change Setting].
- 4. Select [Envelope], and then proceed to the next screen.



To change the envelope weight, press [ChngThickness] to specify the weight.

5. Specify the envelope size, and then press [OK] twice.



When you select [Custom Size], enter the envelope size.

6. Place the original on the exposure glass.

page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

7. Press [Start].

# Copying Onto Envelopes in the Paper Tray

### Coloritant 🖸

- The Duplex Copy function cannot be used for envelopes. If Duplex Copy is specified, press the key to cancel the setting.
- 1. Set the envelopes in the paper tray.

page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

2. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



3. Press the key for selecting a paper tray and specify the paper to use.



4. Select the paper tray in which the envelopes are set.



5. Place the original on the exposure glass.

page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

6. Press [Start].

# Copying in Page Order or for Each Page Number

When copying two or more copies of multi-page originals, you can specify the page order as described below.

## Sort

Copies in the order of the original.



## Stack

Groups together copies of each page in a multi-page original.



1. Press [Copy] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. Press [+] or [-] under [Quantity] on the Copy screen to specify the number of copies.



You can enter this using the keyboard after pressing [Quantity] or a number.

4. Press [Sort/Stack] on the Copy screen.



If the key is not displayed, select it from [Finishing].

5. Select the function to specify.

← Sort/Stack	? ( Reset
• Off	*
Sort	
Stack	Sample Copy
	Start
Check Status 10 Oct. 2018 5	🔅 💿 Stop

6. Press [Start].

When selecting [Sort] and placing an original on the exposure glass, a single set of copies is made. After scanning all of the originals, press [Finish Scn] to copy the rest of the sets.



- When you are using IM 600SRF, the sets of printouts are shifted as they are output.
- You can change the action to perform when paper or memory runs out during sorting under [Memory Full Auto Scan Restart].
- See "Input / Output", User Guide (Full Version).

2

# **Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes**

The machine scans an original to transmit it by fax into the machine's memory before establishing a communication with the destination (Memory Transmission).

You can also transmit a fax while confirming the status of the fax destination.

See "Sending a Fax While Scanning the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Check that [Fax] and [Memory Transmission] are displayed on the fax screen.



3. Place the original in the ADF or on the exposure glass.

See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Settings], and then specify the scan settings.

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Specify the destination.



• To enter the fax number manually, select the destination from the destination history, or search for the destination in the address book, press<sup>±</sup>, and specify the destination.

+	Specify des	tinat	(S)		ر			Preview	
Add					On H	ook	Me	mory Trans	missio
Enter	with Number Keys		LMI	OPQ RST	uvw xyz	관		ndard o Detect	X
🕒 Seleo	t from History		10	YOKOHAMA	OFFICE	G3 Auto		ded Orig.	Ę
123 Spec	ify by Reg. No.		10	LONDON OF	FICE	GS AUto		Settings	
Q Sear	ch Address Book	_!	18	00004 LOS ANGELE	S	G3 Auto		Memory:	100
y	an new pesanadon		10		ICE	GS Auto			
C Rem	aining Memory Info	vuto		00008 HONG KONG	OFFICE	G3 Auto			

You can select only the destination entered using the numeric keypad from the history.

• To specify the destination again, press



- 6. On the [Settings] screen, specify the [Sender] as necessary.
  - When a login user is operating the machine, the login user becomes the sender.

To receive a transmission result by e-mail, select [Notification of Result]. The e-mail address that you selected the [Use as Sender] check box when registering the address will be used as the e-mail address of the sender.

See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

- To print the sender's name on the page received at the destination, select [Stamp Sender Name].
- 7. Press [Start].

To cancel transmission after scanning the original, press [Stop] and operate in [Job Status] [Transmission Standby File].

See "Confirming and Handling a Document in the Fax Queue", User Guide (Full Version).

Vote

- If the telephone line you are connected to requires time to connect to the public line after you dial the external number, enter a [Pause] after entering the number to specify the time to wait before dialing the number. The machine pauses for about two seconds for each single [Pause] entered.
- To use tone-dialing in a pulse-dialing environment, press [Tone]. A tone signal is generated for every number you enter afterward.

- You can perform Immediate transmission only when the total number of destinations specified for all documents exceeds the maximum value.
- During Immediate transmission, the machine cannot scan an original.
- The communication that has been initiated first is displayed on the screen when performing three simultaneous communications.
- For the maximum values of the following items, see "List of Maximum Values for Each Setting Item", User Guide (Full Version):
  - Number of documents that can be stored in memory when using Memory Transmission
  - Number of pages of documents that can be stored in the memory (ITU-T No.1 chart, resolution "Standard", standard document comprising texts)
  - Number of destinations that can be specified for a document when distributing by Broadcast Transmission
  - Number of destinations that can be specified for any document
  - Number of destinations that can be held in the destination history
  - Number of characters/digits in a destination that can be entered manually

# **Registering Fax Numbers in the Address Book**

By registering the destinations to which you frequently send faxes together with the send conditions in the address book, you can easily send faxes.

# Registering a Fax Number and Send Conditions

1. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Register] on the Address Book screen.

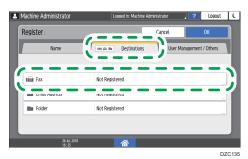


 Enter the information of the destination on the [Name] tab, and then select a title to classify it.



З

4. Press the [Destinations] tab ► [Fax].



5. Specify the Fax Destinations and send conditions.



- Select Line: Select the line to use.
- International Transmission Mode: Specify whether to reduce errors occurring when sending abroad.
- Fax Header: Select the name of the sender printed on the reception sheet of the destination. Register the fax header in advance.

See "Printing the Destination Name, Fax Header, and Standard Message on the Fax Received at the Destination", User Guide (Full Version).

• Label Insertion: Specify the name (title + name) and fixed phrase printed on the reception sheet of the destination.

See "Printing the Destination Name, Fax Header, and Standard Message on the Fax Received at the Destination", User Guide (Full Version).

6. Press the [User Management / Others] tab, and specify the required settings.



3

- User Management: Enter the authentication information to login and use the machine.
- Registration Destination Group: Select a group to which this destination belongs as necessary. Register the group in advance.

See "Registering Groups in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

- Display Priority: When the destinations are sorted in the order of priority, a destination with higher priority is displayed prior to that with lower priority. The destinations with the same priority are displayed in the order of registration.
- Destination Protection: Select this check box to require entering of the protection code to select the destination.

See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).

- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (<sup>(</sup>).

## Changing/Deleting the Registered Data Such as Fax Number

If you delete the destination used for the personal box, file transmission will fail. Exclude the destination from the personal box before deleting it.

1. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



2. Select the destination to change or delete on the Address Book screen.



You can delete multiple destinations at one time.

- 3. Press [Edit] or [Delete] to change or delete the destination information.
- When changing or deleting is complete, press [Home] (<sup>(1)</sup>).

# **Displaying a Preview before Sending a Fax**

You can display the preview of the scanned document on the display of the machine to check if it is scanned as specified.

This function cannot be used when sending a fax while using any of the following:

- Immediate Transmission
- On-hook dialing
- Manual dialing

To display the preview in the correct orientation, specify the [Original Orientation] in [Settings] correctly.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



- 2. Place the original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) or on the exposure glass. See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).
- 3. On the fax screen, press [Settings] ▶ [Original Orientation] to specify the orientation of the original, and then press [Preview].



4. Configure the scan settings.

"Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", Fax

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Specify the destination on the fax screen, and then press [Start].

3

6. Check the preview.



- Flick the image left or right to switch between the pages.
- Pinch in or out on the image to zoom in or out.
- 7. Press [Transmit].

To cancel transmission and perform the procedure from scanning the original again, press [Cancel].

# Viewing the Transmission Result of Sent Faxes

You can check the result of a fax transmission on the fax screen, in various reports, or on the screen of a computer.

The following reports are printed according to the transmission result or the settings:

- Communication Result Report: The result of Memory Transmission is printed.
- Immediate TX Result Report: The result of Immediate Transmission is printed.
- Communication Failure Report: This report is printed when a fax could not be sent to all specified destinations by Memory Transmission.
- Error Report: This report is printed when sending a fax by Immediate Transmission failed.
- Memory Storage Report: This report is printed when the scanned document could not be stored in the memory.

#### • Note

- The fax transmission results can also be confirmed in Records.
- See "Viewing the History of Sent and Received Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).
- Specify [Notification of Results] when sending a fax to receive the transmission result by e-mail.
- page 104 "Checking by E-mail"
- To view the report without text disruption, select a font of even character width in your e-mail application's settings.
- When using the Sender function to select the sender, the transmission results are sent to senders' email addresses that have been registered. Select the sender from the Internet Fax destinations or email destinations in the destination list.

#### Confirming the Information on the Fax Screen

Press [Job Status] ▶ [Transmission Result] on the fax screen to view the information.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Press [Job Status] on the fax screen.



3. Press [Transmission Result], and select the transmission result to display.

LONDON OF	FICE	Logged in: [LONDON OFFICE]	?	Logout	(
← Transi	nission File Status			🥢 Reset	
	Display All Display all transmission file statu	S.			
	Display per User Display the transmission file state	us specified by the user.			
	Display Specified Period Display the transmission file state	us specified by the period.			
Check Stat	11S JU 25 2018 🗲			Stop	

• Display All

Displays the transmission results from among the total number of both transmission and reception results, which cannot exceed 1,000.

Display per User

Press this to display the result of transmissions performed by a specific user. Select the user to display the results and press [Display].

• Display Specified Period

Press this to display the result of transmissions performed in the specified period. Specify the period by entering the start and end dates or selecting from the calendar displayed on the screen, and press [Display].

- 4. Check the transmission results and press [Exit].
  - "--LAN-Fax -->" is shown as the result of transmission to the machine when you send a fax from your computer. For the result of transmission to the destination, refer to the transmission result of the same document number.
  - The destination may be displayed as "\*" depending on the security settings.
  - In a field for an e-mail that was encrypted and distributed or forwarded, the encryption icon
     (a) is displayed.
  - To display the result of the transmission that is completed while displaying the transmission results, close the transmission result screen and open it again.

Vote

 You cannot confirm or change an outgoing document in LAN-Fax, document waiting, or document whose status is "Trnsmtg.".

## Checking the Result in Communication Result Report

In the factory default setting, the machine is configured not to print the report automatically. Specify Auto Print to print the report every time you send a document by Memory Transmission. When more than one destination is specified, the report is printed after transmitting the fax to all destinations is completed.

To configure auto print, select bit number [0] under switch number [03], and change the current value to "1".

See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

# Checking the Result in Immediate TX Result Report

In the factory default setting, the machine is configured not to print the report automatically. Specify Auto Print to print it every time you send a document by Immediate Transmission.

To configure Auto Print, select bit number [5] under switch number [03], and change the current value to "1".

See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

## Checking the Result in Communication Failure Report

This report is printed if the fax could not be sent to all specified destinations by Memory Transmission when Fax is not set to Auto Print (the factory default setting).

## **Checking the Result in Error Report**

This report is printed if a fax could not be sent by Immediate Transmission when Immediate Transmission Result Report is not set to Auto Print (the factory default setting).

# Viewing Memory Storage Report

Memory Storage Report is printed when the document to send by Memory Transmission could not be stored in the memory. If you want to, print the report as a record, and print it even if the document was stored correctly.

To print the Memory Storage Report every time a document is stored in the memory, select bit number [2] under switch number [03], and change the current value to "1".

See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

Note

- It is not printed when you are using Parallel Memory Transmission.
- Even if the machine is set up not to print this report, it is still printed if an original could not be stored.

# Checking by E-mail

You can check the fax transmission result on your computer by sending an e-mail to the sender or the email address specified when sending the fax. The image of the original sent by fax, along with the destination, date and time, and transmission result is included in the e-mail.

1. Press [Fax] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) or on the exposure glass.

See "Setting an Original to Send by Fax on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

3. To send a notification e-mail to the sender, press [Settings] ▶ [Sender], and then specify the sender.

When a login user is operating the machine, the login user becomes the sender.

The e-mail address that you selected for the [Use as Sender] check box when registering the address will be used as the e-mail address of the sender.

See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Select the [Notification of Results] check box.



5. To send a notification e-mail to a destination other than the sender, press [Notification of Results] on the [Settings] screen, and then specify the destination of the e-mail.



6. Configure the scan settings.

See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).

After configuring the send settings, specify the destination on the fax screen, and send the fax.

page 93 "Basic Procedure for Transmitting Faxes"

See "Basic Procedure for Sending Internet Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).

See "Basic Procedure for Sending IP-Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).

## Confirming the Information in Web Image Monitor

In Web Image Monitor, you can view up to 1,000 of the latest total results of the transmission and reception history.

1. Log in to Web Image Monitor as the administrator.

See "Logging in to Web Image Monitor", User Guide (Full Version).

2. From the [Status/Information] menu, click [Job].

	Web Image Monito	pr	
↓ Home			
Status/Information     Print Job/Stored File     Convenient Links	vice Info itus Counter Counter per User	Imart Operation Panel	E Comment Host Name
	Alert		Status
			EAT522

3. Click [Transmission] under [Fax History].

- 4. Confirm the transmission history.
  - Click [Details] to view the details.

« Home								
Fax Records: Transmissio	n							teRefresh ?
Back								
Download Transmission List								
Search for : User Name •		Searc	h					
1/51 (k) Page :	-	splay Items : 10 •						
Date	•	Encryption	Destination	Line	Page(s)	Result	User Name	File No.
U 25. 2018 12:30 PM			-RmFx10.60.155.129->	63		a.♥ OK	A 4	093
ul 25, 2018 12:20 PM			1111	G3	-	ок		093
W 25, 2018 11:07 AM			k	Email				093
ul 25, 2018 10:53 AM	•		1111	63	1	ОК		093
Jul 25, 2018 10:53 AM			-RmFx10.60.155.129->	63	1	OK		093
W 25, 2018 10:21 AM			k	Email	1			093
Jul 25, 2018 10:17 AM			faxtest1@prelude.camel.r	Email	1			092
W 25, 2018 10:13 AM			k	Email	1	Error		092
tul 9, 2018 3:27 PM	0		foutest4@prelude.camel.r	Email	1			087
lul 9, 2018 3:09 PM			foutest4@prelude.camel.r	Email	1			087

• To save the history as a list to a file in the CSV format, click [Download Transmission List].

Home								역 호 🛛 Administra
Fax Records: Transmis	sion							Refresh (
Download Transmission List								
	•	Searc						
			:h					
0 💿 1/51 💌 🗷 Page:	Go Disp	lay Items : 10 💌						
Date	•	Encryption	Destination	Line	Page(s)	Result	User Name	File No.
<b>▲ ▼</b>			A 7	A 7		A. T	A 7	A T
ul 25, 2018 12:30 PM			-RmFx10.60.155.129->	G3		1 OK		09
ul 25, 2018 12:20 PM	8		1111	G3		1 OK		00
ul 25, 2018 11:07 AM	E		k	Email		1		01
ul 25, 2018 10:53 AM	8		1111	G3		1 OK		01
ul 25, 2018 10:53 AM	8		-RmFx10.60.155.129->	G3		1 OK		01
ul 25, 2018 10:21 AM	8		k	Email		1		01
ul 25, 2018 10:17 AM	8		faxtest1@prelude.camel.r	Email		1		0
ul 25, 2018 10:13 AM	8		k	Email		1 Error		0
ul 9, 2018 3:27 PM	8		fcutest4@prelude.camel.r	Email		1		01
ul 9, 2018 3:09 PM	8		fcutest4@prelude.camel.r	Email		1		01
	-							

5. Click [Logout] and then close the Web browser.

# Installing the Printer Driver by Using Device Software Manager Installer

Device Software Manager is a support utility for driver installation in Windows. Device Software Manager helps you to detect the latest driver via the internet automatically according to the computer you are using and install it with a simple procedure.

🔁 Important

- Device Software Manager supports Windows OS only. To install the printer driver on Mac OS, see the following sections:
- page 123 "Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (OS X/macOS)"
- See "Installing the Printer Driver for USB Connection (OS X/macOS)", User Guide (Full Version).
- Follow the instructions of the installer to connect the USB cable.

## Installing Device Software Manager from the CD-ROM

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

2. Click [Install Online].

🙀 Printer and Scanner Drivers	×
Printer and Scanner Drivers	
Install from Disk	Please make a selection. This product does not support Windows 2000/vP/2003/Vista/8.
Install Online	
PCL Printer Driver	Browse This Disk
PostScript 3 Printer Driver	<u>Readme</u>
LAN-Fax Driver	
TwAIN Driver	
Oriver Installation Guide	
Select Language	Exit
	DZX615

3. Select [I accept the agreement] on the "License Agreement" screen, and then click [Install].

5. On the "Driver Update Notification Setting" screen, specify whether to display the message about the driver update, and then click [Next].

The process of installing Device Software Manager starts.

6. Select the connection between the machine and computer, and then click [Next].

Driver Installer		×
Install Steps	Select a setup method	
End User License Agreement	Please select a device interface and then click [Next]. If you want to update the driver on your computer, click [Update Driver].	
Select a setup method	Network	
Devices and Drivers Settings	Make a selection when the PC and the device are connected by the network.	
Install/Update		
Complete		
	Ойгв	
	Select when the PC and the device are directly connected by a USB cable.	
	ŢĮ 🐖 😲 📉 🛉	
	Update Driver Updates the driver that is installed on your computer.	
	Back Next Gancel	

- Network: Search for devices connected to the network.
- USB: Following the instructions on the "Connection with device" screen, connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable to search for the machine.
- 7. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].

Install Steps	Select a device			
End User License Agreement	Select the device to use from the l Click [Click if you cannot find the d	ist and click [Next]. evice] when specifying the device's I	P address.	
Select a setup method	Searching completed.			
Devices and Drivers Settings				Search again
	Device Name	IP Address	Comment	
Select a device	MP CXXX XXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XX XXXX	
Select a device driver	MP CXXX XXX MP CXXX XXX	X0XX00X00X0X X00X00X00X0X	XX XXXX 】	
	Chi if you			
	Click if you canno	t find the device		
Install/Update Complete	Click if you canno			

4

The installation of the driver starts.

- If "Could not verify publisher" is displayed at the beginning of installation, continue the installation. There is no problem with the started installer that is downloaded from the manufacturer's website. Continue the installation.
- When you connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, follow the instructions on the installer screen.

Ø Driver Installer		×
Install Steps	Connection with device	
End User License Agreement	Please connect with the device following the steps below.	
Select a setup method Devices and Drivers Settings	Please plug in the USB cable to the device.	
Install/Update		
Install Automatic Recognition	Please turn on the device.	
Complete	Waiting for connection	
	Note: It may take some time for the device to detect the connected USB cable. If the installation screen of the OS is displayed, please close it and click [Cancel Connection] and re-install.	
	Cancel Connection	I

If the machine is not detected, click [Cancel Connection]. Even if the connection is canceled, the installation is complete. After the installer screen is closed, the machine is added automatically when it is connected to the computer with the USB cable.

8. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

#### Note

• After completing the installation, Device Software Manager icon is created on the desktop screen.



- You can update the installed printer driver with Device Software Manager.
- See "Updating the Driver (Windows)", User Guide (Full Version).

## Installing Device Software Manager from the Downloaded File

- 1. Double-click the downloaded file.
- 2. Select [I accept the agreement] on the "License Agreement" screen, and then click [Install].
- 3. Click [Next] on the "Welcome to the Device Software Manager Setup Wizard" screen.

- 4. On the "Quality Improvement Program" screen, select [I will participate in the Quality Improvement Program] or [I will not participate in the Quality Improvement Program], and then click [Next].
- 5. On the "Driver Update Notification Setting" screen, specify whether to display the message about the driver update, and then click [Next].

The process of installing Device Software Manager starts.

6. After completing the installation, select the [Run Device Software Manager] check box, and then click [Finish].

The installation of Install Online is complete. Next, install the printer driver.

- 7. On the "End User License Agreement" screen, select [Agree], and then click [Next].
- 8. Select the connection between the machine and computer, and then click [Next].

🥑 Driver Installer		×
Install Steps	Select a setup method	
End User License Agreement	Please select a device interface and then click [Next]. If you want to update the driver on your computer, click [Update Driver].	
Select a setup method	● <u>Network</u>	
Devices and Drivers Settings	Make a selection when the PC and the device are connected by the network.	
Install/Update		
Complete		
	O∐sb	
	Select when the PC and the device are directly connected by a USB cable.	
	ŢĮ 🐖 😲 📉 🖨	
	Update Driver Updates the driver that is installed on your computer.	
	Back (Liext Cancel	72730

- Network: Search for devices connected to the network.
- USB: Following the instructions on the "Connection with device" screen, connect the machine and the computer with the USB cable to search for the machine.

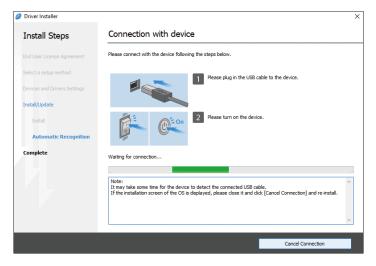
4

9. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].

Driver Installer				
Install Steps	Select a device			
End User License Agreement	Select the device to use from the Click [Click if you cannot find the o	list and click [Next]. device] when specifying the device's I	P address.	
Select a setup method	Searching completed.			
Devices and Drivers Settings			5	earch again
	Device Name	IP Address	Comment	
Select a device	MP CXXX XXX	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XX XXXX	
Select a device driver	MP CXXX XXX MP CXXX XXX	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX	XX XXXX 】	
Printer Preference				
Install/Update				
Complete				
	Click if you canno	t find the device		
	<u>Manually enter the settings</u>	D		
		Back	<u>N</u> ext	<u>C</u> ancel

The installation of the driver starts.

- If "The publisher could not be verified" is displayed at the beginning of installation, continue the installation. There is no problem with the started installer that is downloaded from the manufacturer's website. Continue the installation.
- When you connect the machine and the computer with a USB cable, follow the instructions on the installer screen.



If the machine is not detected, click [Cancel Connection]. Even if the connection is canceled, the installation is complete. After the installer screen is closed, the machine is added automatically when it is connected to the computer with the USB cable.

10. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].



• Double-click the Device Software Manager icon created on the Finder of the computer to update the printer driver.



• See "Updating the Driver (Windows)", User Guide (Full Version).

# Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (Windows)

When the machine and the computer are connected to the same network, the installer searches for the machine to install the printer driver. If the installer cannot find the machine, specify the IP address or machine name to install the printer driver.

# Installing the PCL 6 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

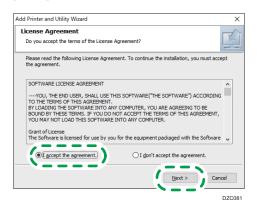
If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

- 2. Select a language, and then click [OK].
- 3. Click [Install from Disk].

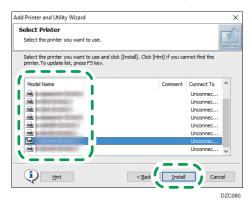
👼 Printer and Scanner Drivers			Х
Printer and Scanner	Drivers	-	
	Install from Disk	Please make a selection. This product does not support Windows 2000/AP/2003/Vista/8.	
	Install Online		
PCL Printer Driver		Browse This Disk Readme	
PostScript 3 Printer Driver		neaune	
LAN-Fax Driver			
TWAIN Driver			
<b>?</b> Driver Installation	Guide		
Select Language		Exit	
		DZ	C992

4. Click [Network Printer(s)].

 On the "License Agreement" screen, select [I accept the agreement], and then click [Next].



- 6. Confirm the "Confirm Network Connection" screen, and then click [Next]. The search detects devices connected to the network.
- 7. Select this machine from among the devices, and then click [Install].



8. If the "Set Port" screen is displayed, select the setting method of the port.

This screen is displayed when the computer cannot access the machine.

Add Printer and Utility Wizard		×
Set Port		
Select a port to set.		
Select a port then dick [Next] to continue.		
<ul> <li>Specify an IP Address to connect the</li> </ul>	port	
IP Address:		
Select from the port list		
Port list:		
10-10-00-000-1		^
TOTAL CONTRACTOR		
All and a second se		~
O Specify a new port		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Specify the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine using one of the following methods:

#### To specify the IP address

- 1. Enter the IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].
- 2. Proceed to Step 9.

#### To select from the port list

- 1. Select the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine, and then click [Next].
- 2. Proceed to Step 9.

#### To create a new port

- 1. Select [Specify a new port], and then click [Next].
- On the "Add Printer and Utility Wizard" screen, select [Standard TCP/IP Port] and click [Next].
- 3. On the "Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard" screen, click [Next].
- 4. On the "Add port" screen, enter the printer name or IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].

The port name is automatically entered. You can change the port name.

- 5. When the "Additional port information required" screen is displayed, select [RICOH Network Printer C model], and then click [Next].
- 6. Click [Finish].
- 9. Specify the name of the printer to install, and whether to use it as the default printer.

Install Printer Driver	$\times$
Select and set Printer.	
Printer Name : <	~
18223H1 H1 22000 F23-8	
Restore Defaults Resets settings to the initial status.	
Continue Cancel	

10. Click [Continue].

Printer driver installation starts.

11. Click [Finish].

When you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it by following the instructions that appear.

# Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the CD-ROM

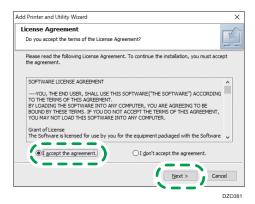
1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer.

If the installer does not start automatically, double-click [Setup.exe] in the root directory of the CD-ROM.

- 2. Select a language, and then click [OK].
- 3. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

ninter and Scanner Drivers	×
Printer and Scanner Drivers	
Install from Disk	Please make a selection. This product does not support Windows 2000/AP/2003/Vista/8.
Install Online	
meneri al	Browse This Disk Beadme
PostScript 3 Printer Driver	Treading
TWAIN Driver	
Driver Installation Guide	
Select Language	Exit
	DZC990

4. On the "License Agreement" screen, select [I accept the agreement], and then click [Next].



- 5. Click [Next].
- 6. Select a method to connect a port.

Add Printer and Utility Wizard	×
Set Port	
Select a port to set.	
Select a port then click [Next] to continue.	
Specify an IP Address to connect the port	
IP Address:	
Select from the port list	
Port list:	
1. State and the second s	^
	*
O Specify a new port	
< Back Next >	Cancel

Specify the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine using one of the following methods:

#### To specify the IP address

1. Enter the IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].

#### To select from the port list

 Select the port to use for the connection between the computer and machine, and then click [Next].

#### To create a new port

- 1. Select [Specify a new port], and then click [Next].
- On the "Add Printer and Utility Wizard" screen, select [Standard TCP/IP Port] and click [Next].
- 3. On the "Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard" screen, click [Next].

 On the "Add port" screen, enter the printer name or IP address of the machine, and then click [Next].

The port name is automatically entered. You can change the port name.

- 5. When the "Additional port information required" screen is displayed, select [RICOH Network Printer C model], and then click [Next].
- 6. Click [Finish].
- Select the [Printer Name] of the machine to open the menu tree, and then specify the setting items.

Install Printer Driver	$\times$
Select and set Printer.	
□       ✓       Printer Name : <	^
B - Printer Name : < >	~
Change settings for `Printer Name`	
FREEDOWS INC 2000097823-9	
Restore Defaults Resets settings to the initial status.	
Continue Cancel	

8. Click [Continue].

Printer driver installation starts.

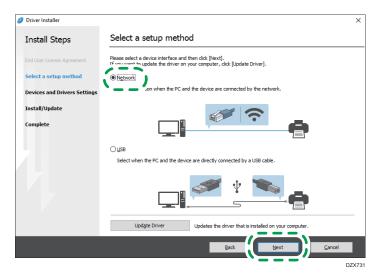
9. Click [Finish].

When you are prompted to restart your computer, restart it by following the instructions that appear.

#### Installing the PCL 6/PostScript 3 Printer Driver from the Downloaded File

- 1. Double-click the downloaded file.
- 2. Confirm where to install, and then click [Extract] or [Install].
  - If the "Security Warning" screen is displayed, click [OK].
  - If the "User Account Control" screen is displayed, click [Yes] or [Allow].
- 3. On the "End User License Agreement" screen, select [Agree], and then click [Next].

4. Select [Network], and then click [Next].



- The search detects devices connected to the network.
- If the error screen is displayed, see page 119 "If the Machine Cannot Be Found".
- 5. Select this machine from among the detected devices, and then click [Next].

Driver Installer				
Install Steps	Select a device			
End User License Agreement	Select the device to use from the Click [Click if you cannot find the d	ist and click [Next]. evice] when specifying the device's I	P address.	
Select a setup method	Searching completed.			
Devices and Drivers Settings				Search again
Select a device	Device Name	IP Address	Comment	
Select a device	MP CXXX XXX MP CXXX XXX	X00X00X00X0X	XX XXXX	
Select a device driver	MP GXXX XXX	200200000000	× × × ×	
Install/Update				
Install/Update Complete				
	Click if you canno	t find the device		
	Click if you canno	t find the device		
	Click if you canno			
			Next	Cancel

Printer driver installation starts.

6. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

# If the Machine Cannot Be Found

The "Network Connection Error" screen is displayed.



Confirm and perform 1 to 3, and then click [OK]. If the machine still cannot be found, specify the IP address or machine name to install the printer driver.

1. Click [Click if you cannot find the device].

Driver Installer				
Install Steps	Select a device			
End User License Agreement	Select the device to use from th Click [Click if you cannot find the	e list and click [Next]. e device] when specifying the device'	s IP address.	
Select a setup method	Searching completed.			
Devices and Drivers Settings				Search again
Select a device	Device Name	IP Address	Comment	
Select a device driver				
Printer Preference				
Install/Update				
Complete				
Complete	Click if you can	not find the device		
Complete	×		,	
Complete	Click if you can		,	
Complete	×		Next	Cancel

- Select [Specify device IP address] or [Specify device name], and then click [Next].
   When specify the machine IP address
  - 1. Enter the IP address of the machine and click [Search].

Search by IP addre	955		
Please enter the device's IP addre For how to check the device's IP :	ess and click [Search]. address: nlease refer to the User Gi	ide.	
IP address:		Search	
<u> </u>		/	
Device Name	IP Address	Comment	
Manually enter the settions	T		
	<i></i>		
	Please enter the device's IP addr For how to check the device's IP IP address:	IP address:	Please enter the device's IP address and cick [Search]. For how to check the device's IP address, neave refer to the Iser Guide. IP address: Search Search Device Name IP Address Comment

2. When the machine is detected, click [Next].

Printer driver installation starts.

#### When specify the machine name

1. Select the machine to use, and then click [Next].

Driver Installer	X
Install Steps	Select Device
End User License Agreement	Please select device to use and click [Next].
Select a setup method	Device Name:
Devices and Drivers Settings	` <b></b> ′
Select a device	
Select a device driver	
Printer Preference	
Install/Update	
Complete	
	Back Next Gancel
	DZC09-

2. On the "Printer Preference" screen, select one of the port names from among "Port Name", and then click [Next].

Driver Installer			
Install Steps	Printer Preference		
End User License Agreement	Printer settings can be changed.		
Select a setup method	Driver Name:	PCL 6 0	
Devices and Drivers Settings	* Printer Name:	PCL 6	
Select a device	Comment:	PCL6 Driver (For Windows)	
Select a device driver	* Port Name:	✓ <u>A</u> dd Port	0
Printer Preference	Set as default printer (i)	• *	
Install/Update	Advanced Settings		
Complete	Share this printer (i)	Shared Name: PCL 6	1
	User Code:	0	
	* : is a required entry field.	<u>R</u> estore Defau	lts
		Back Next Cance	ł
		·/	DZO

Printer driver installation starts.

For details about the procedure for specifying the IP address after installing the printer driver, see the following section:

"When You Cannot Print a Document even if the Printer Driver Is Installed", Driver Installation Guide

3. When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

# Installing the Printer Driver for Network Connection (OS X/macOS)

Install the PPD file (printer driver) under OS X/macOS, and then register the machine on the computer from the system preferences.

### Installing the PPD file

1. Set the CD-ROM in the computer, and click [macOS] to display the [macOS PPD Installer] folder.

To install the driver from the downloaded file, display the folder that is the location of the downloaded file.

2. Double-click the package file.



- To install from the CD-ROM, double-click the package file in the [macOS] ▶ [macOS PPD Installer] folder.
- When the install confirmation screen is displayed, click [Continue].
- 3. On the "Introduction" screen, click [Continue].
- 4. On the "License" screen, click [Continue] and then click [Accept].
  - When prompted to select where to install the driver, specify the install location, and click [Continue].

5. Click [Install].

🔴 🔴 🔿 🐳 İr	stall Driver
	Standard Install on "Macintosh HD"
<ul> <li>Introduction</li> <li>License</li> <li>Destination Select</li> <li>Installation Type</li> <li>Installation</li> <li>Summary</li> </ul>	This will take 7.8 MB of space on your computer. Click Install to perform a standard installation of this software on the disk "Macintosh HD".
	Change Install Location
	Go Back Install
	DZY687

6. Enter the computer's user name and password, and then click [Install Software].

$\bigcirc$	Installer is t	rying to install new software.		
2	Enter your password to allow this.			
	User Name:	User		
	Password:	•••••		
		Cancel Install Software		

The installation of the PPD file starts.

7. When the installation is complete, click [Close].

# Registering the Machine in [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners]

Register the PPD file of the machine in the system preferences to enable printing.

- 1. Select [System Preferences...] from the Apple menu.
- 2. Click [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners].

3. Click [+].

Printers & Scan	ners	Q Search	
	No printers are availabl ( Add (+) to set up a pr		
Default printer:	Last Printer Used	0	
Default paper size:	A4	0	?
			DZX689

4. Click [IP], and configure the information of the machine.

		Add	
<b>       </b>		Q Search	
Defai IP	indows	Search	
Address	s:		
I	Enter host name or IP address	5.	
Protoco	I: HP Jetdirect - Socket		
Queue	9:		
	Leave blank for default queue		
Nam	e:		
Locatio			
			>
Us	e:		
			Add
			DZX690

- Address: Enter the IP address of the machine.
- Protocol: Select [LPD (Line Printer Daemon)]. If the printer takes time to perform operations when using the [LPD (Line Printer Daemon)] protocol, change the protocol to [HP Jetdirect -Socket].
- Use: Check that the machine name is displayed. If "Generic PostScript Printer" is displayed, the entered IP address may not be correct.

4

#### When "Generic PostScript Printer" is displayed even though the IP address is correct

Perform the following procedure to select the PPD file of the machine:

1. Select [Select Software...] on "Use".

• • •		Add	
<u>Q</u>	-	Q Search	
Default IP	Windows	Search	
Address:	(10:8-8-8-32)		
	Valid and complete h	ost name or address.	
Protocol:	HP Jetdirect - So	ocket ᅌ	
Queue:			
	Leave blank for defau	lt queue.	
Name:	(1)注意连续注意)		
Location			
	Auto Select	at Drintor	
Use	✓ Generic PostScri		
	Select Software.		
	Other	'	
		Aud	
			DZC098

2. Select the machine on the "Printer Software" screen, and then click [OK].

Printe	er Software
	Q Filter
TEDymis: Isainil® Prinkey	
三世的ないたウオーやいた岩田村田市	
Exam 9 Pit Series	
##2000FFAX	
+++17: Dealaint Baria a	
+++> Lassentel Berlus TCL +++	
-mismissin mismissi Labst Prinks	(章)
1300 PA Pitt Barries	
12001-9-1011-8004000	
	Cancel OK
	DZ(099

#### 5. Click [Add].

The progress screen is displayed.

- If the progress screen does not close after a while, click [Configure...] or [Settings] and configure the option configuration of the printer. For the procedure of the option configuration, see page 127 "Specifying the Option Settings".
- 6. Check that the machine name is added to the [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners] screen.

	Printers & Scan	ners	Q Search	
Idle, Last Used	Location: Kind: Status:			
+ -	✓ Share this printe	er on the network	Sharing Preferences	
	Default printer:	Last Printer Used	0	
	Default paper size:	A4	0	?
				D7X691

7. Close the system preferences screen.

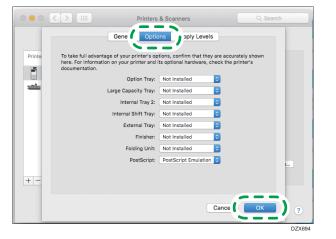
# Specifying the Option Settings

If the option configuration of the machine is not automatically reflected, select the option installed on the machine in [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners].

- 1. Select [System Preferences...] from the Apple menu.
- 2. Click [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners].

- ••• < > .... Q Search Printers & Scanners 10030000 Options & Suppli Locatio Kind: Status: Idle Share this printer on the network Sharing Preferences... + -Default printer: Last Printer Used \$ ٥ Default paper size: A4 ? DZX693
- 3. Select the machine from the list, and then click [Options & Supplies...].

4. Click [Driver] or [Options], select the option installed on the machine, and then click [OK].



- If the usable options are not displayed, the IP address has not been entered correctly or the PPD file has not been registered properly. To enter the IP address or register the PPD file, see page 124 "Registering the Machine in [Print & Scan] or [Printers & Scanners]".
- 5. Close the system preferences screen.

# **Basic Procedure for Printing Documents**

Specify the printer driver and configure the Document Size, Paper Type, and other settings to print a document.

🔁 Important

- Duplex printing is selected as the default setting. If you want to print on only one side, select [Off] for the two-sided printing setting.
- If you send a print job via USB 2.0 while the machine is in Sleep mode, an error message may appear after the print job is completed. In this case, check whether the document was printed.

#### Printing a Document in Windows

1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.

The procedure to display the setting screen varies depending on the applications.

For example in Microsoft Word/Excel, click [Print] on the [File] menu, select the device to use, and then click [Printer Properties].

Info	Print
New	Copies: 1
Open	
Save	Print
Save As	Printer 💿 📩
	sour printer name Ready
Print	Printer Properties
Share	Settings
Export	Print All Pages The whole thing
	D70400

2. Specify the Document Size, Paper Type, Paper Tray, and other settings.

You can specify the print settings on the [Frequently Used Settings] tab and [Detailed Settings] tab. Basic settings can be specified on the [Frequently Used Settings] tab, even if you do not use the [Detailed Settings] tab.

equently Used Settings Detailed S	Settings Configuration/About			
Current Setting	One Click Preset List:	Job Type:		_
User Setting		Normal Print	✓ ▶ Details	
	Factory Default	Document Size: A4 (210 x 297 mm)	✓ Qustom Paper Size	
	Pactory Default	Print On:	Orientation	
	<b>N</b>	Same as Original Size	O Landscape	
	1+2	Paper Type:	Input Tray:	_
	2 on 1	Plain & Recycled	V (1) Auto Tray Select	~
	-	off	v ⊳⊕ off	
Document Size:		2 sided:		
A4 (210 x 297 mm) Print On: Same as Original Size	1 sided	Long Edge Bind(Op	en to Left/Top) $$	
Reduce/Enlarge: Fit to Print Size	I	Booklet:		
	1+2	Off	~	
	2 on 1 (2 sided)	<u>S</u> taple:		
Settings Summary		Off	~	
Register Current Settings			Copies: (1 to 999)	
	Anage			
			OK Cancel	Help

• One Click Preset List: Some of the useful functions such as Combine or 2-sided are registered. Click the icon of the function to select. You can register frequently used print settings in One Click Preset.

See "Registering Frequently Used Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

• Job Type: Select [Normal Print] to execute printing immediately.

You can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the document (Sample Print).

See "Making a Partial Print as a Test and Proceeding to Print the Rest of the Document", User Guide (Full Version).

You can store documents in the machine (Locked Print, Hold Print, or Stored Print).

See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

- Document Size: Select the size of the document to print.
- Orientation: Specify the orientation of the document. Select Portrait or Landscape.
- Paper Type: Select the type of paper to use.
- Input Tray: Select the tray loaded with the paper to use. When you select [Auto Tray Select], a
  suitable paper tray is selected automatically according to the specified [Print On] and [Paper
  Type].

If you do not want to use particular trays when [Auto Tray Select] is specified, set the machine so it does not automatically select those trays.

See "Tray Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

To prevent the machine from selecting other trays automatically, disable auto tray switching.

See "System (Printer Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

• Copies: Enter the print quantity.

On the [Detailed Settings] tab, you can configure the advanced settings. Change the menu and specify the setting items.

	ettings Configuration/About	
Current Setting User Setting User Setting Document State: A4(212 x 527 mn) Print On: Same ab Onjonal State Reduz/Etharge: Rt to Print Sate	Pertor     Image: Solution of the s	Quston Paper Size
Settings Summary	Same as Original Size	~
L		OK Cancel Helo

The caution icon (①) indicates that there are disabled items. Click the icon to check the cause.

- 3. After completing the configuration, click [OK].
- 4. On the application, click the button for printing.

The procedure to print varies depending on the applications.

For example in Microsoft Word/Excel, click [Print] on the screen shown in Step 1.

#### Note

- On the [Devices and Printers] screen, right-click the printer icon of the machine, and then click [Print Settings] to change the default values of the printer settings.
- When you use the driver distributed from the print server, [Standard settings] specified in the print server are displayed as the default.

#### Printing a Document in OS X/macOS

In the following example procedure, OS X 10.13 is used. The procedure may vary for different versions.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and click [Print] on the [File] menu.
- 2. Select the printer you use from "Printer:".

- Printer: your printer name ٢ ٢ Setting Two-Sided 1 Paper Size: US Letter Orientation: 🚺 👔 Auto Rotate Show Notes Scale 1 of 1 Scale to Fit: Print Entire Image Fill Entire Paper Copies per page 1 PDF V Hide Details Cancel DZC405
- 3. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, and other settings.

- Copies: Enter the print quantity.
- Paper Size: Select the size of the document to print.
- Orientation: Specify the orientation of the document. Select Portrait or Landscape.
- 4. Select a category from the pop-up menu, and then specify the paper tray and paper type.

	Printer: your printer name
	Presets: Default Settings
	Copies: 1 🗹 Two-Sided
	Pages: O All
	From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: US Letter 0 8.50 by 11.00 inches
	Orientation:
	✓ Preview
	Layout
	Scale: Paper Feed
	Job Log
	Copies pe 💊 🕳 🕳 🕳 📥 💿
	Color Balance Details Background Numbering
? PDF V Hide Details	Printer Features

#### **Paper Feed**

• All Pages From: Select the tray loaded with the paper to use. When you select [Auto Select], a suitable paper tray is selected automatically according to the specified paper size and paper type.

When the paper of the specified size is not loaded on the machine, printing is performed following the settings of the machine.

#### Job Log

• Job Type: Select [Normal Print] to execute printing immediately.

You can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the document (Sample Print).

See "Making a Partial Print as a Test and Proceeding to Print the Rest of the Document", User Guide (Full Version).

You can store documents in the machine (Locked Print, Hold Print, or Stored Print).

See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

#### **Printer Features**

Select a category in "Feature Sets", and then specify the setting items.

Printer Featu	ures
Feature Se	✓ Basic Paper
Fit to Paper: Prompt U Rotate by 180 degrees:	Finishing Print Quality Effects
	EAT61

- Paper
  - Paper Type: Select the type of paper to use.
- 5. After completing the configuration, click [Print] to print.

# Printing on Both Sides of Paper

Specify 2-sided Print in the printer driver.

## Specifying 2-sided Print (Windows)

Specify 2-sided Print on the [Frequently Used Settings] tab.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Paper Size, Paper Type, Orientation and others.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

3. On the [Frequently Used Settings] tab, specify the binding side of the paper in "2 sided".

Printing Preferences		
Frequently Used Settings Detailed Set	tings Configuration/About	
Current Setting User Setting	One Click Preset List:	Job Type:           Declaifs           Disconnel Sine:           Quarternel Sine:            A4 (210 X 297 mm)          Quarternel Sine:
	1+2 2 on 1	Pynt On: Same as Original Size      Pype: Pype: Pana Recycled      Pana Recycled      Pynt Tray: Pype:
Document Size: A4 (210 x 297 mm) Print On: Same as Original Size Reduce/Enlarge:	1 sided	Leyout: Coff V P O Off V 2 siste: Cong Edge Bind(Open to Left/Top) V
Fit to Print Size	1+2 2 on 1 (2 sided)	C Off ~ Staple:
Settings Summary		off ~
Register Current Settings	Expand list >> Manage	<u>C</u> opies:(1 to 999)
		OK Cancel Help
		FA

#### Orientation of the original and binding side

Orientation	Long Edge Bind	Short Edge Bind
Portrait		
	(Open to left)	(Open to top)
Landscape		
	(Open to top)	(Open to left)

- 4. After completing the configuration, click [OK].
- 5. On the application, click the button for printing.

# Specifying 2-sided Print (OS X/macOS)

Specify 2-sided Print on the [Layout] menu.

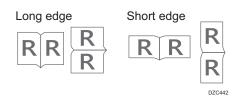
- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, Paper Type, and other settings.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

3. Select the [Two-Sided] check box, and then select [Layout] to specify the binding side of the paper.

	Printer: your printer name
	Presets: Default Settings
	Copies: 1 🚺 🗹 Two-Sided
	Pages: 💽 All
	From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: US Letter 0 8.50 by 11.00 inches
	Orientation:
	Layout
	Pages per sneet:
1of1 >>>>	Layout Direction: 🛃 🔊 🙀
	Two-Sided: Long-Edge binding
	Flip horizontally
	rup nonzontany
? PDF V Hide Details	Cancel Print
	D7044

#### Orientation of the original and binding side



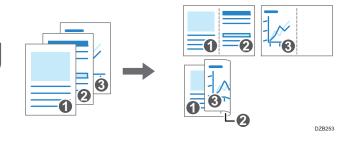
4. After completing the configuration, click [Print].

# Combining and Printing Multiple Pages on a Single Sheet of Paper

You can print multiple pages on a single sheet at a reduced size (Combine 2 Originals).

For example, you can reduce an original of A4 size to A5 size and print two pages on an A4 sheet. You can use the 2 Sided Print and Combine 2 Originals functions at the same time to economize on paper.

You can print up to 16 pages on a single sheet and specify the order to arrange the pages on the sheet.



### Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (Windows)

Specify the Combine 2 Originals function on the [Frequently Used Settings] tab.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Paper Size, Paper Type, Orientation and other settings.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

3. Specify the number of pages to combine and the order of the pages.

Printing Preferences			
equently Used Settings Detailed Se	ttings Configuration/About		
Current Setting User Setting	One Click Preset List:	Job Type:  Normal Print  Document Size:	V Detais
1→2	Factory Default	A4 (210 x 297 mm) ↓ Print On: Same as Original Size	Custom Paper Size      Orientation     Orientation     Olientation
	1+2	Paper Type:	OLandscape Input Tray:      Auto Tray Select
Document Size:		Layout: 2 Pages per Sheet	Page Order: ∨ ▶① → ↓ Left-Right/Top-Bottom ∨
A4 (210 x 297 mm) Print On: Same as Original Size Reduce/Enlarge: Fit to Print Size	1 sided	Long Edge Bind(Open to Le	eft/Top) ~
	1+2 2 on 1 (2 sided)	Off     Staple:	~
Settings Summary	~	Off	~
Register Current Settings	Expand list >> Manage		Copies:(1 to 999)
			OK Cancel Help

- Layout: Select the number of pages to combine.
- Page Order: Select the order of the pages.
- Draw Frame Border: Select the [Draw Frame Border] check box on the [Detailed Settings] tab
   [2 Sided/Layout/Booklet] to draw a frame around each page.
- 4. After completing the configuration, click [OK].
- 5. On the application, click the button for printing.

When printing from an application that supports the same function as the machine, do not set the function in the application. If the setting in the application is enabled, the print result may not be as intended.

## Specifying the Combine 2 Originals Function (OS X/macOS)

4

Specify the Combine 2 Originals function on the [Layout] menu.

- 1. Open a document to print on the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu in the application.
- 2. Specify Paper Size, Orientation, Paper Type, and other settings.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

Select [Layout], and then specify the number of pages to combine and the order of the pages.

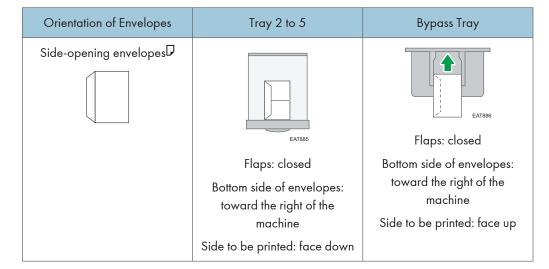
PDF      Hide Details     Cancel Print		Printer: your printer name Presets: Default Settings Copies: 1 Pages: All Prom: 1 to: 1 Paper Size: US Letter Salo by 11.00 inches Orientation: 1 Pages per Sheet: 2 Layout Direction: 2 Border: None Reverse page orientation Flip horizontally
DZC44	? PDF V Hide Details	

- Pages per Sheet: Select the number of pages to combine.
- Layout Direction: Select the order of the pages.
- Border: Select a type of border line to draw between the pages.
- 4. After completing the configuration, click [Print] to print.

# **Printing on Envelopes**

Load envelopes in the bypass tray or paper tray and change the tray paper settings on the control panel.

1. Load an envelope in the bypass tray or the paper tray.



2. On the Home screen, press [Settings].



3. Press [Tray Paper Settings] ► [Tray Paper Size] or [Printer Bypass Paper Size], and then select the size of the envelopes.



- If the size of the loaded envelope is not included in the list, select [Custom Size] and enter the value.
- 4. Press [OK].

5. Press [Paper Type] for the tray in which the envelopes are loaded, and then select [Envelope].



- 6. After completing the configuration, press [Home] (🏠).
- 7. Open a document to print in the computer, and display the setting screen of the printer driver from the print menu application.
- 8. Specify the paper size and paper type.

#### Windows

tings Configuration/About			
One Click Preset List:	Job Type:		
	Normal Print	V Detais.	•
	Document Size:		
Factory Default	C5 Env. (162 x 229 mm)		
	Same as Original Size	✓ O Landscape	
1→2			
			~
2 on 1	<b>N</b>		
	Layout:	Page Order:	_
man.	Off	✓ ▶① Off	~
	2 sided:		
1 sided	Off	$\sim$	
100.000			
1+2	Off	~	
2 on 1 (2 sided)	Staple:		
	Off	$\sim$	
Evened let his			
		Copies:(1 to 999)	
Manage		1 💌	
		OK Cancel	Help
	Factory Default	See Cidk Preset List:       Job Type:         Image: See Cide Preset List:       Job Type:         Factory Default       Image: See Cide Preset List:         Image: See Cide Preset List:       See Cide Preset List:         Image: See Cide Preset List:       See Cide Preset List:         Image: See Cide Preset List:       Preset Type:         Image	Document Size:       O Isomal Print       Declasment Size:         Factory Default       Document Size:       Castom Paper Size         Factory Default       Paper Type:       Declasment Size         Paper Type:       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Paper Type:       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Paper Type:       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Declasment Size       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Paper Type:       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Declasment Size       Declasment Size       Declasment Size         Declasment Size<

- Document Size: Select the envelope size. If the envelope size is not included among the options, enter the value in [Custom Paper Size...].
- Paper Type: [Envelope]

You can specify a custom paper size, which is commonly used as the option of the Document Sizes.

See "Printing on Custom-sized Paper Loaded on the Bypass Tray", User Guide (Full Version).

#### OS X/macOS

Printer:	your printer name
Presets:	Default Settings
Copies:	1 Two-Sided
Pages:	
Paper Size:	Envelope C5 0.3 y 9.01 inches
Urrentation:	
	Printer Features
	Festure Sate Daner
Paper Type:	Envelope
(( ) 1 of 1 ) >>>	
Banner Page	: Off ᅌ
Banner Page	Input Tray: Auto Tray Select ᅌ
Banner Page	Paper Type: Plain/Recycled
PDF      Hide Details	
? PDF V Hide Details	Cancel Print
	DZC41

- Paper Size: Select the envelope size. If the envelope size is not included among the options, select [Manage Custom Sizes...] and enter the value.
- Paper Type: [Envelope]
- 9. Execute printing.

# Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel

To print a document stored from the printer driver in the machine, perform the print operation on Quick Print Release of the control panel. The file administrator also can delete unneeded documents and unlock documents locked by entering an invalid password.

1. On the Home screen, press [Quick Print Release].



2. On the Quick Print Release screen, select the user ID used to store the document.

Enter the password when the Locked Print documents or the Stored Print documents protected by passwords are stored. The screen shows the documents corresponding to the entered password and the documents without passwords.

3. Select a document to print.



- Preview: The first page of the document is displayed. If you select multiple documents, the preview cannot be displayed.
- Print Settings: Change the print settings for the selected document.

See "Print Settings Configured on the Control Panel", User Guide (Full Version).

- Manage Files: Change the print time of a Hold Print job or the password specified on the document. If you select multiple documents, Manage Files is disabled.
- 4. Press [Print].

# Printing from a USB Flash Memory Device or SD Card Directly

You can connect a memory storage device to the media slot of the machine and print the files stored on it. Use this to print external data easily.

# 

• Keep SD cards and USB flash memory devices out of reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows an SD card or USB flash memory device, consult a doctor immediately.

#### Note

- USB flash memory device and SD cards are supported for direct printing. However, certain types of USB flash memory device and SD cards cannot be used.
- The machine cannot print a document over 1 GB.
- You can select up to 999 files within 1 GB total.
- If the print job of PDF file is canceled, execute printing from a PDF viewer such as Acrobat Reader while using the printer driver.

#### **Printable File Formats**

File format	Details
JPEG files	Exif version 1.0 or later
TIFF files	Uncompressed TIFF files TIFF files compressed using the MH, MR, or MMR method
PDF files	PDF version 1.7 (Acrobat 8.0 compatible) or earlier <sup>* 1</sup>
XPS files	Possible for all XPS files

\*1 The machine does not support the following functions: Crypt Filter, DeviceN Color Space (more than eight components), watermark note, optional contents (version 1.6), AcroForm



• The PDF file of a custom size may not be printed.

## Printing from a Memory Storage Device

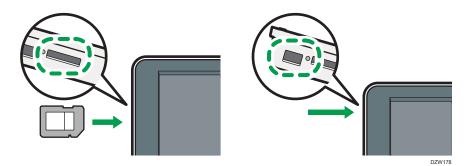
1. On the Home screen, press [Print/Scan (Memory Storage Device)]



2. On the Print/Scan (Memory Storage Device) screen, press [Print from Storage Device]



3. Insert a memory storage device in the media slot on the side of the control panel.



- 4. Press [USB] or [SD Card].
- 5. Select the file to print.

Files in the external media are displayed as icons or thumbnail images.



- C ← Printer Select File Print Settings Resolution Copy Ratio Quantity Preview 100% 1 600dpi (Fast) + 2 Sided Select Paper Trav Selected Auto U. Of Staple Sort/Stack Book EIII. ń - Mar Check Status <del><</del>5 Stop EAT661
- 6. Press [Print Settings] to specify the settings of 2-Sided Print or Finishing as necessary.

- Resolution: Select the resolution of the image to print.
- Copy Ratio: Select whether to print in the original size or to reduce or enlarge to match the paper size.
- Quantity: Enter the print quantity.
- 2 Sided: Select the opening direction of the printed sheet.
- Select Paper Tray: Select the paper tray.
- Sort/Stack: Select whether to print in ordered sets or in a batch page by page.
- Staple: Select the staple position.
- Book: Select the opening direction of the Magazine binding. You can specify the setting of Magazine binding only when printing a file in the PDF/XPS format.
- 7. Press [Start] to start printing.

# Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data by E-mail

Scan a document and attach the scanned data to an e-mail and send it from the machine.

• Configure the SMTP server and network settings in advance.

See "Configuring the Settings to Send E-mails from the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

• Register an e-mail address in the address book to select the address as the destination easily when sending an e-mail.

See "Registering E-mail Addresses in the Address Book", User Guide (Full Version).

#### **Basic Procedure for Sending an E-mail**

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [Scan to Email] on the scanner screen.



3. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

- 4. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.
- 5. Press [Sender] and specify the sender.
  - When a logged in user is operating the machine, the logged in user becomes the sender.
  - When [On] is specified in [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [Auto Specify Sender Name], you can send an e-mail even when the sender is not specified. The administrator's email address that is registered on the machine is used as the sender.

- Specify the sender to receive an opening confirmation.
- 6. Select the [Reception Notice] check box to receive an opening confirmation of the e-mail from the destination.



7. Specify the destination on the scanner screen.



• To enter the e-mail address manually, select the destination from the destination history, or search for the destination in the address book, press<sup>±</sup>, and specify the destination.



Press to specify the destination again or select [To], [Cc] or [Bcc].



8. Specify the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 161 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

page 164 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

9. Press [Start].

# Registering the E-mail Destination Specified When Sending an E-mail in the Address Book

When specifying an e-mail address by entering it manually or selecting it from the scanner records, you can register the e-mail address in the address book before sending an e-mail.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [Scan to Email] on the scanner screen.



3. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen and configure the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 161 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

page 164 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

- 5. Specify the destination.
  - When entering manually
    - 1. Press 🔹 and then select [Enter Using Keyboard].



2. Enter the e-mail address, and press.

LONDON OFFICE	Logged in: [LONDON OFFICE]	n Files Status 🕢 Reset
Scan to Email Scan to Email john@abc.com Freq. AB CD EF GH UK		Review B & W
ABCD EF GH UK ABCD COMPANY BERLIN OFFICE COMPANY YORK OFFICE NEW YORK OFFICE COMPANY COMPANY OFFICE COMPANY OFFICE	LUMN OPQ RST UVW XYZ C VOKOHAMA OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE CONDON OFFICE	PDF 200 dei 1 Sided Oris. Send Settings > Start
Check Status 18 ML 2018	o <mark>⋒</mark> ≎	Stop DZC5

3. Select the e-mail address that was entered manually and press [Reg. to Add. Book].



- 4. Enter the name and other additional information.
- When selecting from the transmission history
  - 1. Press 💷 and then select [Select from History].



2. Press [Register] of the destination to register.

2			Logged in: [ABCD COMP	'ANY]	Logout
Select from	n History			Cancel	ОК
	Can sele	ct from 10 most rec	ent destinations and als	o add to address book	
	✓ 03 Dec. 13:07	john@abc.com		Regist	er
				_	
Check St	- 103 Dec	2018		à	⊙ Stop

- 3. Register the name and other additional information.
- 6. Press [OK] to close the address book screen after registering the information.
- 7. Press [OK] to close [Select from History] screen.
- 8. Press [Start] on the scanner screen.

# Scanning Documents and Sending the Scanned Data to a Folder

To send the data of a scanned original to a shared folder on a computer, create the shared folder on the computer in advance and register the destination folder in the address book.

• You also need to configure the settings for connecting to the network from the machine.

See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).

See "Connecting to a Wireless LAN", User Guide (Full Version).

• You can add a folder destination in the address book easily using Scan to Folder Helper.

See "Specifying the Destination of Send to Folder Using the Scan to Folder Helper App", User Guide (Full Version).

Note

- Using the SMB 3.0 protocol, you can save a file in the folder that was configured individually to apply encryption.
- The scanned file can be also saved to an FTP server.
- See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).

## Printing the Check Sheet

Print the check sheet below to make a note of the setting values regarding the destination computer.

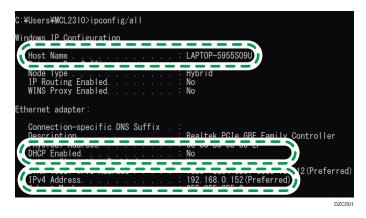
	Check sheet		
No.	Items to check (example of the setting values)	Setting entry column	
	Computer name		
[1]	DHCP server enable/disable setting		
	IP address		

	Check sheet		
No.	Items to check (example of the setting values)	Setting entry column	
[2]	Domain name/workgroup name	USERDNSDOMAIN: USERDOMAIN:	
	Computer login user name		
[3]	Computer login password		
[4]	Shared folder name on computer		

# Confirming the Computer Information (Windows)

Confirm the name, IP address, and other information of the computer used to create a shared folder, and write down the information on the check list.

- Click [Start] on the computer and click [All apps] ▶ [Windows System] ▶ [Command Prompt].
- 2. Enter "ipconfig/all" and press the [Enter] key.
- 3. Check the computer name, enable/disable status of the DHCP server and IP address, and write down the information in [1] on the check sheet.



When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

	Computer name	LAPTOP-5955S09U
[1]	DHCP server enable/disable setting	No
	IP address	192.168.0.152
		D70500

4. Enter "set user" and press the [Enter] key.

Enter a space between "set" and "user".

5. Check the domain name, workgroup name and login user name, and write down the information in [2] on the check sheet.



When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

[2]	Domain name/workgroup name	USERDNSDOMAIN [ abcd-net.local ] USERDOMAIN [ ABCD-NET ]	
	Computer login user name	TYamada	
		DZC5	24

"USERDNSDOMAIN" is not displayed when the login user who executed the command is a local user.

6. Check the login password on the computer, and write down the information in [3] on the check sheet.

The required information on the computer is confirmed. Now create a shared folder on your computer and specify the access permissions of the folder.

# Creating a Shared Folder (Windows)

Create a shared folder on the Windows Desktop and specify the access permissions of the folder.

- 1. Log on to Windows as a user with administrative privileges.
- 2. Create a new folder in Windows Explorer and write down the folder name in [4] on the check sheet.

- 3. Right-click the created folder, and then click [Properties].
- 4. On the [Sharing] tab, click [Advanced Sharing].

shared_doc Properties	×
General Sharing Security Previous Versions Customize	
Network File and Folder Sharing	
Shared	
Network Path: ¥¥(-∫, ↓, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Share	
Advanced Sharing	
Set custom permissions, create multiple shares, and set other	
Advanced Sharing	
Password Protection	
People must have a user account and password for this computer to access shared folders.	
To change this setting, use the <u>Network and Sharing Center</u> .	
Close Cancel Appl	y

5. Select the [Share this folder] check box, and then click [Permissions].

After completing the procedure, remove Everyone (unspecified user), and then add a user allowed access the folder. The user whose information is written down on the check sheet is used in the example shown below.

- 6. Select [Everyone] under [Group or user names], and then click [Remove].
- 7. Click [Add] ▶[Advanced] ▶ [Object Types].
- 8. Select [Users], and then click [OK].

Object Types	×
Select the types of objects you want to find.	
Object types:	
Cther objects	
	OK Cancel
	<b>DZC31</b>

- 9. Click [Locations], select the name of the domain or work group the user belongs to ([2] on the check sheet) and then click [OK].
- 10. Click [Advanced] ► [Find Now].

11. From the Search results, select the login user name of the computer to be added ([2] on the check sheet) and then click [OK].

When you cannot find a specific user, click [Columns], or right-click the [Search results] field, select [Choose columns], and then select [Logon Name] from the [Columns available] list or [Logon Name (pre-Windows 2000)].

- 12. Click [OK].
- 13. Select the added user, and then select the [Allow] check box under [Permissions].

Permissions for shared_doc		×
Share Permissions		
Group or user names:		
2	2	
	A <u>d</u> d	<u>R</u> emove
Permissions for kanaet	Allow	Deny
Change		
1000		
ОК	Cancel	Apply
		DZC32

#### 14. Click [OK] to close all windows.

The access permissions on the folder have been successfully configured. If you want to specify access permissions for the folder to allow other users or groups to access the folder, configure the folder as follows:

- 1. Right-click the created folder and then click [Properties].
- 2. Click [Edit...] on the [Security] tab.
- 3. Click [Add] ► [Advanced].
- 4. Select [Object Types] or [Locations] and click [Find Now].
- 5. Select the user or group to assign permissions and click [OK].
- 6. Click [OK].
- 7. Select the added user, select the [Allow] check box under [Permissions], and then click [OK].
- 8. Click [OK] to close all windows.

#### Note

• If you are creating a shared folder for the first time on this computer, you must enable the file sharing function. For details, see Windows Help.

## Confirming the Computer Information (OS X/macOS)

Confirm the name of the computer used to create the shared folder, login user name and other settings and write down the information on the check list.

- 1. Log on to OS X/macOS as a user with administrative privileges.
- 2. Click the Apple menu and select [About This Mac].
- 3. Click [System Report].
- 4. Click [Software] on the left pane and write down the displayed computer name in [1] and the user name in [2] on the check sheet.

Hardware	System Software Overview:	
<ul> <li>Network</li> <li>Software</li> <li>Accessibility</li> <li>Applications</li> </ul>	System Version: Kernel Version: Boot Volume:	Macintosh HD
Components Developer	Computer Name: User Name:	User's MacBook User (User)
Disabled Software Extensions Fonts Frameworks Installations Logs	System Integrity Protection: Time since boot:	Enabled 5 minutes
		DZC52

When the screen shown above is displayed, fill in the sheet as follow:

[1]	Computer name	User's MacBook
[2]	Computer login user name	User
		DZC526

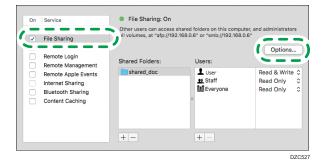
- 5. Click the Apple menu and select [System Preferences].
- In [Network], click [Ethernet] or [Wi-Fi] and write down the displayed IP address in [1] on the check sheet.

The required information on the computer is configured. Now create a shared folder.

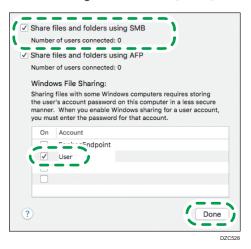
### Creating a Shared Folder (OS X/macOS)

Create a shared folder and specify the access permissions of the folder.

- 1. Log in to OS X as a user with administrative privileges.
- 2. Create a new folder and write down the folder name in [4] on the check sheet.
- 3. Click the Apple menu and select [System Preferences].
- 4. Click [Sharing], select the [File Sharing] check box and then click [Options].



5. Select the check boxes of [Share files and folders using SMB] and the user account to use for file sharing and then click [Done].



When the [Authenticate] screen is displayed, enter the password of the selected account and then click [OK].

6. Click [+] below [Shared Folders] on the [Sharing] screen.



- 7. Specify the folder created in Step 1 and click [Add].
- 8. Select the folder added in Step 7 and confirm that the permission of the user to access the folder is set to "Read & Write".

On	Service	File Sharing: On		
<ul> <li>✓</li> </ul>	Screen Sharing File Sharing		s shared folders on this compu 92.168.0.6" or "smb://192.168.	
✓ ✓	Printer Sharing			Options
	Remote Login			
	Remote Management	~		
	Remote Apple Events	shared_doc	L User	Read & Write
	Internet Sharing		Everyone	
	Bluetooth Sharing		Everyone Everyone	Read Only
	Content Caching		0	
		+ -	+ -	

# Registering the Created Shared Folder in the Address Book

This section describes the procedure for registering a shared folder created in Windows using the information on the check sheet as an example.

1. Press [Address Book] on the Home screen.



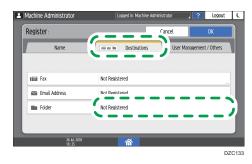
2. Press [Register] on the address book screen.

ddress Book		Q Search		Exit
View All 🔹	Sort by Displ. Priority 🛛 🔻	15/2100	6	Register
Freq AB   CD   EF	GH   IJK   LMN   OPQ   RS1	UVW XYZ 💤	١.	`
ABCD COMPANY	YOKOHAMA OFFI 00002 III III III	CE	m <sup>+</sup>	Create Group
BERLIN OFFICE	LONDON OFFICE			Edit
NEW YORK OFFICE	LOS ANGELES			
KYOTO OFFICE	BEIJING OFFICE		Û	Delete
00007 🗰 🖬 🖬 Shanghai Office	00008 📹 🖬 🖬 HONG KONG OFFI	CE		
00009 📾 🖬	00010 📾 🖬			

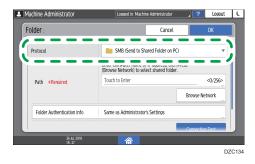
3. Enter the information of the destination in the input boxes displayed on the [Name] tab, and select the title to classify the destination.



4. Press the [Destinations] tab, and then press [Folder].



5. Select [SMB (Send to Shared Folder on PC)] in [Protocol].



6. Specify the network path to the shared folder in "Path".

#### Entering the path name manually

If the computer name is "YamadaPC" ([1] on the check sheet) and the shared folder name is "shared\_doc" ([4]), enter as follows:

\\YamadaPC\shared\_doc

#### Selecting a folder from the list

Enter the IP address or host name of the computer on which to search for a shared folder, press [Browse Network], and then select the destination folder.

7. Under [Folder Authentication Info], select [Specify Other Authentication Information] and then enter the name and password of the login user who will access the shared folder.

8. Press Connection Test.

When no connection is established, check the message that appears.

page 263 "When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function"

- 9. Press [OK].
- 10. Press the [User Management / Others] tab and specify the settings as required.



- 11. Press [OK].
- 12. Press [Home] (🏠) after specifying the settings.

### Basic Procedure for Performing Send to Folder

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Select [To Folder] on the scanner screen.



3. Place the original on the scanner.

"Placing an Original to Scan", Scan

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

4. Press [Send Settings] and configure the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 161 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

page 164 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

5. Press<sup>±</sup>, select [Search Address Book] or [Specify by Reg. No.] and then specify the shared folder that is registered in the address book.

1	LONDON OFFICE	Logged in: [LONDON OFFIC	]	? Logout (
	Scan to Folder	<b>_</b>	Scan Files Sta	itus 🕢 Reset
I airo 🖊	+ Specify destina	·(S)		Preview B & W
	IIII Manual Entry	LMN OPQ RST UVW XY	Ζ ⊉	PDF 🔁
	Select from History	KYOTO OFFICE		200 dpi 📃 1 Sided Orig. 🔄
clinac	123 Specify by Reg. No.	Branch_02		Send Settings >
	Q Search Address Book	00013		
	T Program New Destination			Start
	Check Status 18.3.1.2018	ণ্চ 🔺 🔅		💿 Stop
				DZC533

- To enter the information manually, press ±, and select [Manual Entry]. Select SMB as the protocol and enter the required information.
- To specify the destination again, press<sup>3</sup>



6. Press [Start].

J	Note	

- If any of the machine's security functions are enabled, select the destination from the registered folder only when you send files by [Scan to Folder].
- After scan files are sent, the destination and file name fields will be automatically cleared. If you want to preserve the information in these fields, contact your local dealer.

# Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density

Specify the quality and density to scan on the [Send Settings] screen.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

3. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen and specify the original type (quality), density and resolution.

#### When specifying the original type



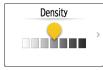
Original Type	Appropriate for
Black & White: Text	A document mainly composed of text in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
	Dropout Color
	The machine scans the original while erasing the specified color (Chromatic Color, Red, Green, Blue). To specify a color to erase more precisely, move toward [Narrow] in the color range to erase.
Black & White: Text / Photo	A document with text and photos in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
Black & White: Text / Line Art	A document with text and figures in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.
Black & White: Photo	A document with figures and photos in black and white. The original is scanned in two tones of black and white.

Original Type	Appropriate for
Gray Scale	A document with figures and photos in black and white. The original is scanned as an image comprising many shades of gray.
Full Color: Text / Photo	A document mainly comprising text in color.
Full Color: Glossy Photo	An original in color such as silver-halide prints or pictures.
Auto Color Select	The machine determines the type of the original automatically while scanning. It may not be determined correctly depending on the scan settings and original content.

• You can select only [Gray Scale], [Full Color: Text / Photo], or [Full Color: Glossy Photo] when [High Compression PDF] is specified in [PDF Type] under [File Type].

page 164 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

#### When adjusting the density



- Move to the left or right to adjust the density. The colors in the scanned image darken as you move the slider to the right.
- Select the [Auto Density] check box to adjust the density automatically when scanning an original with a non-white background such as newspaper or a document that has show-through.
- You can specify the shading level of [Auto Density] in [Scanner Settings] ▶ [Scan Settings] tab ▶ [Background Density of ADS (Full Color)].

See "Scan Settings (Scanner Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).

#### When specifying the resolution



- Select the resolution to use for scanning the original. Image quality improves as the resolution increases, but the size of the scanned data also increases.
- To ensure the quality of scanned data, [100 dpi] cannot be selected in the following cases:
  - [High Compression PDF] is specified in [PDF Type] under [File Type]

page 164 "Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document"

- [OCR] is selected in [PDF Detailed Settings] under [File Type]
   See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).
- 4. To send the scanned document to an e-mail address, press [Sender] and then specify the sender.
- 5. Specify the destination, and press [Start].

# Specifying the File Type or File Name When Scanning a Document

Specify the settings in [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.

1. Press [Scanner] on the Home screen.



2. Place the original on the scanner.

See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

- 3. Press [Send Settings] on the scanner screen.
- 4. Press [File Type], and select the file type to save the scanned document.

Press [Others] to display the detailed settings screen.

1	LOND	ON OFFICE	Logged in: [LONDON OFFICE]		_ ?	Logout	(
÷	- F	ile Туре		Scan File	s Status	Reset	
	0	TIFF / JPEG (Single Page) Originals containing mainly photos/pictures. Ea	ach page saved as a single file.			Preview	
	0	TIFF (Multi-page) Multiple scanned pages are combined and sav	ed as a single file.				
	0	PDF (Single Page) Saves each page as a single PDF file.		>			
	۰	PDF (Multi-page) Saves multiple scanned pages as a single PDF	PDF	>		Start	
0	heck	: Status 🕺 11 : 18	A 🗘		0	Stop	

- TIFF / JPEG (Single Page): A separate image file is created for each single page.
  - When you specify Black & White in [Original Type], the scanned document will be sent in TIFF format.
  - When you specify Gray Scale or Full Color in [Original Type], the scanned document will be sent in JPEG format.

If you cannot send the document in JPEG format even if you specify Gray Scale, select [On] in [Scanner Settings] ► [Send Settings] ► [Compression (Gray Scale / Full Color)].

- TIFF (Multi-page): Multiple pages are combined into a single image file.
- PDF (Single Page): A PDF file is created for each single page.
- PDF (Multi-page): Multiple pages are combined into a single PDF file.

In addition to the normal PDF format, you can also specify [High Compression PDF] which reduces the file size while maintaining the legibility, or [PDF/A] which conforms to the international standard and is suitable for long-term storage.

5. To specify the file name, press [File Name] and enter the file name.

The file name is generated by combining the following three items:

LONDON OF	FICE	Logged in: (LONDON OF	FICEJ , ?	Logout	C
File Name			Cancel	OK	
	File Name	test			
	Start Number	0001			
	Add Date & Time				
Check Stat	US 18 Jul 2018		ф <u>@</u>	Sto	

- File Name: Enter the string to use at the beginning of the file name.
- Start Number: Specify the starting number of a serial number that will be appended at the end of each file name when specifying a file format comprising a single page per file.
- Add Date & Time: Select this check box to add the "year, month, day, hour, and minute" the scanning is performed at the end of the file name.
- 6. Specify the scan settings according to the purpose of the scanned data.

page 161 "Scanning an Original with Suitable Quality and Density"

7. Specify the destination to send the scanned document and then press [Start].

Vote

- You can also embed the security and digital signature settings, and text information in the PDF file.
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).
- There are requirements that must be met when scanning the original to create a file in the High Compression PDF format.
- page 298 "List of Specifications"
- You can change the number of digits in [Scanner Settings] ▶ [Send Settings] tab ▶ [No. of Digits for Single Page Files].
- See "Send Settings (Scanner Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
- When you select [High Compression PDF], you can select [Speedy PDF Creation] mode and [Quality Priority] mode. When you select [Quality Priority] mode, the machine makes high compression PDF files with a higher imaging quality than PDF files made in [Speedy PDF Creation] mode.

# 6. Document Server

# Storing Documents in Document Server

You can store documents scanned by the machine in the document server.

You can also store them using the printer driver.

See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

#### C Important

- Documents stored in the document server are deleted after three days (72 hours) in the factorydefault configuration. Change the settings in [Auto Delete File in Document Server] to change the period until documents are deleted or to specify not to delete documents automatically.
- See "Changing the Storage Period of Document Server or Specifying an Indefinite Period", User Guide (Full Version).
- 1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



2. On the document server screen, press [To Scanning Screen].



3. Specify the folder to store documents, the document name, and other settings.



• Target Fldr. to Store: Select the "Shared Folder" created in the factory default configuration or select a user folder, that you create yourself, in which to store the document.

To select a user folder, create it in advance.

See "Organizing Document Server Using Folders", User Guide (Full Version).

- User Name: Specify the user name displayed as the owner of the document. Select a user from the address book or enter the name.
- File Name: Specify the name of the scanned document. If you do not specify the file name, a name such as "COPY0001" or "COPY0002" is assigned automatically.
- Password: Specify the password required for printing the document.

#### 4. Place the original.

Place the original in the same way as in the Copy.

See "Placing an Original on the Scanner", User Guide (Full Version).

5. Specify the scanning conditions such as paper size or type.

#### 6. Press [Start].

- When you place the original in the Auto Document Feeder (ADF), the folder list screen is displayed after scanning the original.
- When you place the original on the exposure glass, press [Finish Scanning] after scanning all originals to print to display the folder list screen.

#### Vote

- The machine stores the documents with the size and orientation specified for the tray you selected, regardless of the actual size or orientation of the original.
- You can specify whether to allow other users to read or edit the stored document.
- See "Specifying Access Privileges for Documents Stored in Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
- When you do not want to delete stored documents, specify [Auto Delete File in Document Server] to [Off], and then store the documents. When [Specify Days] or [Specify Hours] are selected after documents have been stored, the documents will not be deleted. Only the documents stored after a setting change are deleted automatically.

6

# **Printing Documents in Document Server**

You can print the documents stored in the document server with the same settings, paper size, and other settings specified when the documents were scanned. You can also change the print settings or specify a page to print.

#### Vote

- You can print a document in the document server using Web Image Monitor.
- See "Accessing Documents in Document Server from a Web Browser", User Guide (Full Version).

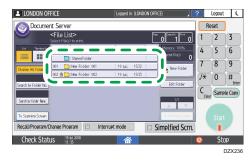
## Printing a Document with the Settings Specified When Scanned

#### 🔁 Important

- When printing two or more documents at a time, the print settings specified for the first document are applied to all the remaining documents.
- Some of the selected documents may not be printed due to the difference in the size or resolution.
- 1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.



Press [Search by Folder No.] or [Search by Folder Name] to search for a folder.

3. Select the document to print.



- Press [User Name] or [File Name] to search for a document.
- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.
- To print multiple documents at once, select the documents to print in the printing order. You can select up to 30 documents.
- After selecting the documents, you can confirm the selected documents by pressing [Order] to list them in the printing order.

#### 4. Press [Start].

• Note

- To stop printing, press [Stop] ► [Cancel Printing].
- You can change the number of sets during printing. This function can be used only when the Sort function is selected in the printing conditions.
- To change the quantity while printing is in progress, press [Stop], enter the quantity, and then press [Resume Printing]. The quantity you can enter differs depending on when you press [Stop].

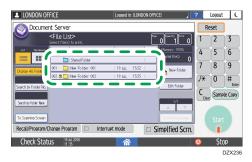
## Changing the Print Settings to Print a Document

#### 🔁 Important

- When you select two or more documents to change the print settings, the first document keeps the changed contents after printing. The second document and later documents do not keep the changed contents and instead keep the settings of when they were stored.
- 1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.



3. Select the document to print.



- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.
- 4. Press [To Printing Screen].
- 5. Change the print settings.



- When specifying Sort, you can make a partial print as a test and proceed to print the rest of the quantity by pressing [Sample Copy].
- Press [Back to File List] to return to the screen for selecting documents.
- 6. Press [Start].

## **Specifying a Page to Print**

1. On the Home screen, press [Document Server].



2. On the document server screen, select the desired folder.



3. Select the document to print and press [Print Specified Page].



- If the document is password protected, enter the password and press [OK].
- To print two or more copies, enter the quantity using the number keys.
- 4. Specify the page to print.



• 1 st Page: Select this to print the first page only. When you selected two or more documents, the first page of each document is printed.

- Specified Page: Select this to print the specified page.
- Specify Range: Enter the page printing starts in [Start Number] and the page printing ends in [End Number].
- 5. Press [Start].

6. Document Server

# 7. Web Image Monitor

# Using Web Image Monitor

Web Image Monitor is a screen to confirm the machine status and settings on the computer.

When the machine and a computer can be connected to a network, you can access to Web Image Monitor by entering the IP address of the machine on the address bar of the Web browser.

#### Accessing to Web Image Monitor

1. Enter the IP address of the machine in the address bar of the Web browser.

(	- ≙ →

Example: when the IP address of the machine is "192.168.1.10"

If SSL is specified

https://192.168.1.10/

- If SSL is not specified
  - http://192.168.1.10/

When you do not know whether SSL is specified on the machine, enter the address starting with https. When you fail the connection, enter the address starting with http.

When entering the IPv4 address, do not enter "0" for each segment. If "192.168.001.010" is entered, you cannot access the machine.

2. Confirming the machine status or settings on the top page of Web Image Monitor.

					English 🗸	Switch	Refresh	3
Status/Information	Device Name	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	Comment	-				
	Location     Control Panel	: : Smart Operation Panel	Host Name	: And the second second second				
	Control Panel	: Smart Operation Panel						
	Alert		Status					
	= Alert		System System	Status OK				
	Messages (2item(s))	Logged in: Machine Administrator	Toner	Status OK				
			Input Tray	Status OK				
			Output Tray	J Status OK				
							Check Detai	_

The machine status and remaining amount of consumables are displayed.

To change the settings, click [Login] at the top right on the screen and enter the User Name and Password.

#### **Recommended Web Browser**

Windows	OS X/macOS
Internet Explorer 11 or later	Safari 3.0 or later
Firefox 10, 15 or later	Firefox 10, 15 or later
Google Chrome version 19 or later	Google Chrome version 19 or later
Microsoft Edge 20 or later	-

• You can use the screen reader software JAWS 7.0 or later on Internet Explorer.

#### Vote

- When you use a DNS server or WINS server, you can use Host Name instead of IP address to connect the server.
- When the screen is distorted or the operation is unstable, confirm that "JavaScript" or "Use Cookies" is specified to Active on the computer.
- When using Host Name under Windows Server 2008 or later in the IPv6 environment, resolve Host Name in the external DNS server. You cannot use the host file.
- When specifying the settings from Web Image Monitor, do not log in to the machine from the control panel. The setting value may not be reflected.

### What You Can Do on the Web Image Monitor

Items displayed on the Web Image Monitor and settings depend whether the machine is logged in.

• When not logged in

The machine status, settings, and job status are displayed. You can browse the settings of the machine but cannot change them.

• When logged in (as a user)

Log in as a user registered in the Address Book. The users can operate the jobs that they executed and change a part of settings of the machine.

• When logged in (as an Administrator)

The administrator can change all settings of the machine.

#### What you can do

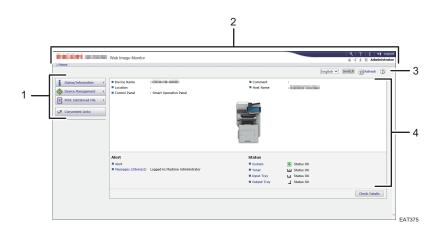
Function	Not logged in	User	Administrator
Machine status	~	~	~

Function	Not logged in	User	Administrator
Machine settings	√*1	√*1	~
Machine setting change	-	√*1	~
Job list	4	4	~
Job history	4	4	~
Access to Address Book	-	4	~
File operation in Document Server	-	4	~
Network settings	-	√*1	~
Network settings change	-	√*1	~
Cancel printing	-	-	~
Security settings	-	-	~

✓: Available -: Not available

\*1 Depending on the Administrator settings

# Web Image Monitor Screen



#### 1. Menu

Menu items described below are displayed.

- Status/Information: Displays the machine status, option configuration, counter, and job status.
- Device Management: Manages the machine settings and Address Book.
- Print Job/Stored File: Operates the files stored in the printer driver or document server.

• Convenient Links: Displays the link to the Favorite URL.

#### 2. Header

An icon to link to the Login screen is placed at the top right on the screen. The Help, Version Information, and Keyword Search buttons are also displayed.

#### 3. Refresh/Help

🕒 (Refresh): Update the information in the work area.

(Help): View or download Help file contents.

4. Main Area

The machine status and settings are displayed.

# Specifying Web Image Monitor Help

Web Image Monitor has Help to describe the function of setting items. When you use Help for the first time, you can select to read online Help or to download Help File.

#### View Online Help Now

You can view the latest Web Image Monitor Help on the Internet.

#### Download Help File

You can download Web Image Monitor Help to the computer and view it. When you store the downloaded Help file in the Web server and assign to the Help button (????), you can view the Help without connecting to the Internet.

To assign the downloaded Help file to the Help button (??????), specify the path to the Help file following the procedure below.

- 1. Log in to Web Image Monitor as an Administrator.
- 2. Click the Help button (? ⑦) at the top right on the screen.

					English 🗸	Switch	Refresh	3	
Status/Information >	Device Name		Comment						
	Location     Control Panel	: : Smart Operation Panel	Host Name						
	Alert		Status						
	Alert		System System	Status OK					
	Messages (2item(s)	) Logged in:Machine Administrator	Toner	Status OK					
			Input Tray	🖬 Status OK					
			Output Tray	J Status OK					
							Check Detail		

- 3. Select the operating system and displayed language, and then click [Download].
- 4. Unzip the downloaded zip file and store it in the Web server.
- 5. Click [Configuration] on the "Device Management" menu on Web Image Monitor.

- 6. Click [Webpage] under the "Webpage" category.
- 7. Enter the path to the Help file stored in the Web server in "URL" under "Set Help URL Target".

For example, when URL of the Help File is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/JA/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".

- 8. Click [OK].
- 9. After completing the procedure, log out and finish Web Image Monitor.

7. Web Image Monitor

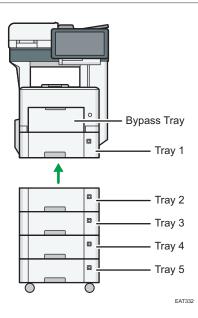
# 8. Adding Paper and Toner

# Loading Paper into the Paper Tray

The method of loading paper varies for each tray type.

# 

When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, make sure not to trap or injure your fingers.



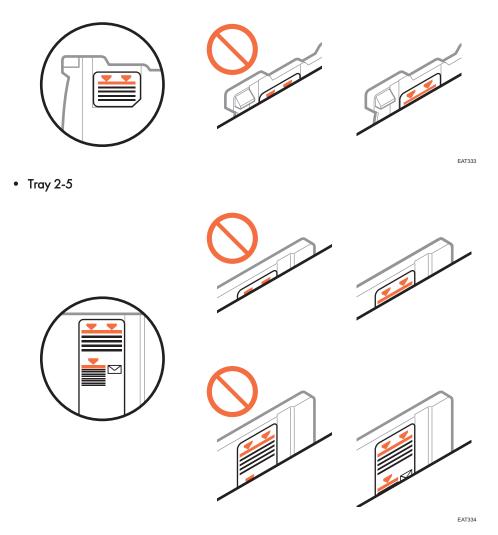
- Before loading paper into a tray, check the paper size and type that can be loaded in the tray. page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
- To load paper, specify the paper type or thickness in [Tray Paper Settings] of [Settings].
   See "Tray Paper Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- To load thin paper, thick paper, or other special paper, load the paper into the bypass tray.
- When loading paper on a tray which has a few sheets of paper, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once from the tray. Take out all sheets, fan the sheets, and then load them again.
- You may hear the sound of rubbing paper. This is not a malfunction.

#### Loading Paper into Tray 1 to 5

Adjust the side and end fences according to the paper size.

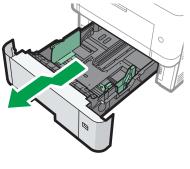
#### Coloritant 🖸

- Do not stack paper over the limit mark. If you load paper over the limit mark, the printed images may become slanted or a paper jam may occur.
  - Tray 1



Load paper into every tray in the same way. In the following example procedure, Tray 1 is used.

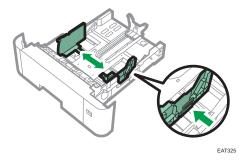
1. Pull the tray carefully until it stops, lift the front side of the tray, and then pull it out of the machine.



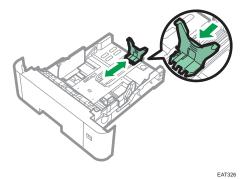
EAT057

Place the tray on a flat surface.

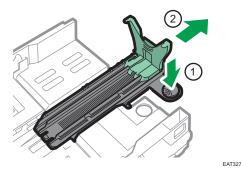
2. Squeeze the clip on the side fence and slide it to match the paper size.



3. Squeeze the end fence and slide it inward to match the standard size.



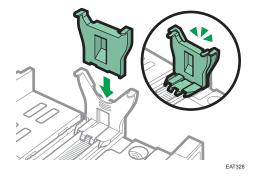
When loading paper that is larger than A4D or  $8^1/_2 \times 11D$ , push the button, and then pull the end fence out to match the paper size.



Region B (mainly North America)

Mount the attachment to the end fence when loading  $5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2$  size paper.

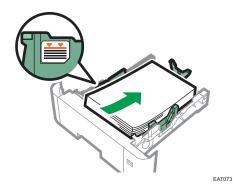
You can use this attachment in Tray 1 only.



8

4. Load the new paper stack print side down.

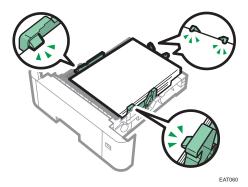
Make sure paper is not stacked higher than the upper limit (upper line) marked inside the tray.



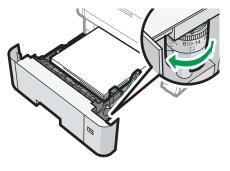
5. Adjust the paper guides to close any gaps.

Do not move paper loaded in the tray more than a few millimeters.

Moving the loaded paper excessively may cause damage to paper edges on the openings of the tray's lifting plate, resulting in sheets being folded or becoming jammed.

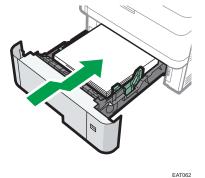


6. Adjust the paper size dial to match the size and feed direction of paper in the paper tray.



EAT061

7. Lift the front side of the tray, and then slide it into the machine carefully until it stops.



LATOOZ

To avoid paper jams, make sure the tray is securely inserted.

Vote

- Letterhead paper must be loaded in a specific orientation.
- page 200 "Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper"
- You can load envelopes into Tray 2 to 5.
- page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

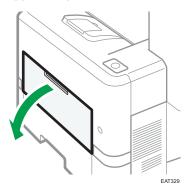
# Loading Paper into the Bypass Tray

Use the bypass tray to use OHP transparencies, adhesive labels, and paper that cannot be loaded in the paper trays. The maximum number of sheets you can load into the bypass tray depends on the paper type.

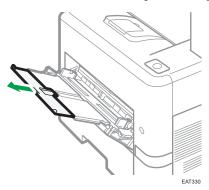
page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"

#### 😭 Important

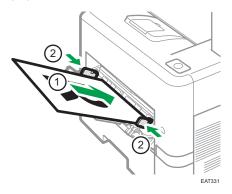
- After loading paper, specify the paper size and type using the control panel. When printing a document, specify the same paper size and type in the printer driver as specified on the machine.
- 1. Open the bypass tray.



Pull the extender out when loading A4D,  $8^1/_2 \times 11D$  or larger paper.



2. Load paper face up until it stops, and then adjust both sides of the paper guide to match the paper width.



#### Vote

- When using the bypass tray, it is recommended that you set the paper direction to  ${\sf P}.$
- Letterhead paper must be loaded in a specific orientation.
- page 200 "Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper"
- You can load envelopes into the bypass tray. Envelopes must be loaded in a specific orientation.
- page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"

# Specifying Regular Sizes Using the Control Panel

1. Press [Settings] on the [Home] screen.



- 2. Press [Tray Paper Settings].
- 3. Press [Printer Bypass Paper Size].
- 4. Select the paper size.

🔅 System S	Settings			Exit	
Printer Bypass Paper S	Printer Bypass Paper Size OK				
Select item, then pres	is [OK].				
A4 🕞	A5C7	AS 🖓	A6 🖓	BS JIS	
B6 JIS⊡	CS Env 🖓	C6 Env 🖓	DL Env 🖓	8%×14 🕞	
8%×5%₽	8%×13 🖓	8%×11₽	8%×14 🕞	8%×13 🕞	
8 ×13 🕞	8 ×10 🖓	7k×10%	5%×8%⊡	5%×8%D	
1/2 🔺 hwas 🔍 Next					
Ouroe Sce ← , mm 1 , mm ► Ouroe Sce					

- 5. Press [OK].
- 6. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🏠).

# Specifying a Custom Size Paper Using the Control Panel

1. Press [Settings] on the [Home] screen.



- 2. Press [Tray Paper Settings].
- 3. Press [Printer Bypass Paper Size].
- 4. Press [Custom Size].

If a custom size is already specified, press [Change Size].

- 5. Press [Horizontal].
- 6. Enter the horizontal size using the number keys, and then press [#].

Custom Size	Cancel	OK
Select horizontal or vertical key.		
	<b>10.0</b> mm .0 - 216.0>	
	97.0 mm 8.0 - 356.0>	
	Clear	#

- 7. Press [Vertical].
- 8. Enter the vertical size using the number keys, and then press [#].
- 9. Press [OK] twice.
- 10. After completing the procedure, press [Home] (🟠).

# **Specifying Paper Type and Thickness Settings**

If the print settings and the loaded paper that are used for a print job do not match, a mismatch error occurs.

Check and specify the paper settings before you start printing.

🔂 Important

• Before you change the settings, confirm the priority of the paper settings for printing (priority to the printer driver or to the control panel).

#### On the printer driver

Check the settings of paper tray and paper type on the printer driver and make sure the settings match the loaded paper.

## On the control panel

Press [Settings], [Tray Paper Settings], and then [Next]. Check the settings of the tray you use (bypass tray, tray 1, tray 2, tray 3 and tray 4) and make sure [Paper Type] and [Paper Thickness] match the loaded paper.

If [Display Automatically] in [Display Paper Settings in Bypass] of [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Copier / Document Server Settings] is enabled, the paper type currently specified appears on the control panel when you load paper on the bypass tray. Make sure the settings match the type of the paper you load on the bypass tray.

# **Recommended Paper Sizes and Types**

The recommended paper sizes and types for each tray are as described below.

• Note

- When performing multiple sheet feeding, fan sheets thoroughly or load sheets one by one from the bypass tray.
- The printing speed may be lower depending on the paper size or paper type.

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Select the paper size using the paper size dial on the tray: A4D, A5D, A6D, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14$ D, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ , $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}$ D	500 sheets
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Set the paper size dial on the tray to "Asterisk", and select the paper size with the control panel: A5, B5, JIS, B6, JIS, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13D$ , $8 \times 13D$ , $8 \times 10D$ , $7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}D$ , $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}D$ , $16KD$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{2}/_{5}D$	500 sheets
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Custom size: Region A Vertical: 148.0–356.0 mm Horizontal: 105.0–216.0 mm Region B Vertical: 5.83–14.01 inches Horizontal: 4.14–8.50 inches	500 sheets

# Tray 1

# Paper Feed Unit

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Select the paper size using the paper size dial on the tray: A4D, A5D, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ , $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}D$	500 sheets
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Set the paper size dial on the tray to "Asterisk", and select the paper size with the control panel: B5 JISD, B6 JISD, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13D$ , $8 \times 13D$ , $8 \times 10D$ , $7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}$ D, $16$ KD, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{2}/_{5}$ D	500 sheets
64–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond– 44 lb. Cover) Plain Paper 1–Thick Paper 1	Custom size: Region A Vertical: 162.0–356.0 mm Horizontal: 92.0–216.0 mm Region B Vertical: 6.38–14.01 inches Horizontal: 3.63–8.50 inches	500 sheets
Envelopes	Set the paper size dial on the tray to "Asterisk", and select the paper size with the control panel: $4^{1}/_{8} \times 9^{1}/_{2}D$ , $3^{7}/_{8} \times 7^{1}/_{2}D$ , C5 EnvD, C6 EnvD, DL EnvD	*1

\*1 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on the paper's thickness and condition.

# **Bypass Tray**

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
60–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 lb. Bond– 80 lb. Cover) Thin Paper–Thick Paper 3	*1: A4D, A5DD, A6D, B5 JISD, B6 JISD, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13D$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 14D$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13D$ , $8 \times 13D$ , $8 \times 10D$ , $7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}D$ , $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}DD$ , $16$ KD, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{2}/_{5}D$	100 sheets <sup>*2</sup>
60–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 lb. Bond– 80 lb. Cover) Thin Paper–Thick Paper 3	Custom size <sup>*3</sup> : Region A Vertical: 148.0–356.0 mm Horizontal: 70.0–216.0 mm Region B Vertical: 5.83–14.01 inches Horizontal: 2.76–8.50 inches	100 sheets <sup>*2</sup>
OHP transparencies	A4₽, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 11₽	*4
Label paper (adhesive labels)	A4D	*2
Envelopes	<sup>*1</sup> : 4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> × 9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> □, 3 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub> × 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> □, C5 Env□, C6 Env□, DL Env□	*5

- \*1 Specify the paper size.
- Using the Copy function.

see "Copying from the Bypass Tray", User Guide (Full Version).

• Using the Printer function.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

- \*2 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The number of sheets you can load in the bypass tray varies depending on the weight and condition of the paper.
- \*3 Specify the paper size.
- Using the Copy function.

see "Copying from the Bypass Tray", User Guide (Full Version).

• Using the Printer function.

page 129 "Basic Procedure for Printing Documents"

- \*4 When loading OHP transparencies in the bypass tray, do not stack paper over the limit mark.
- \*5 Load envelopes so that the height of the stack of envelopes does not exceed the limit mark of the bypass tray without pressing on the stack of envelopes.

# **Notes on Special Paper**

Paper Type	Note
Setting thick paper	page 197 "Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status"
Setting envelopes	page 198 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"
Setting letterhead paper	page 200 "Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper"
Setting label paper (adhesive labels)	We recommend that you use specified label paper. If paper other than the specified one is used, normal operation and quality cannot be guaranteed.
Setting transparencies	<ul> <li>Use A4<sup>D</sup> or 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11<sup>D</sup> size OHP transparencies, and specify their size.</li> <li>Usually only one side of OHP transparencies can be used for printing. Be sure to load them with the print side down.</li> <li>When using transparencies, check their print sides carefully. Erroneous loading may cause problems. Remove copied or printed sheets one by one.</li> </ul>

# Paper Thickness for Each Paper Weight

Paper Thickness	Paper weight
Thin Paper	60–63 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 lb. Bond)
Plain Paper 1	64–74 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17–20 lb. Bond)

Paper Thickness	Paper weight
Plain Paper 2	75–90 g/m² (20-24 lb. Bond)
Middle Thick	91–105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24–28 lb. Bond)
Thick Paper 1	106–135 g/m² (28–36 lb. Bond) <sup>*1</sup>
Thick Paper 2	136–170 g/m <sup>2</sup> (36 lb. Bond–63 lb. Cover)
Thick Paper 3	171–220 g/m² (63–80 lb. Cover)

\*1 Allowed weights for Trays 1 to 5 and duplex printing are 106 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28 lb. Bond to 44 lb. Cover) paper.

# Unusable Paper

# 

• Do not use stapled sheets of paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or any kind of conductive paper. Doing so can result in fire.

#### Paper causing faults

Do not use any of the following kinds of treated paper. Doing so may cause faults.

- Paper for inkjet printers
- Thermal paper
- Art paper
- Aluminum foil
- Carbon paper
- Conductive paper
- Paper with perforated lines
- Hemmed-edge paper
- Window envelopes
- Tab stock
- Certain types of OHP transparencies for color printing

Do not copy or print onto sides that are already printed.

## Paper causing paper jam

Do not use the following kinds of paper. It may cause a paper jam.

• Bent, folded, or creased paper

- Perforated paper
- Slippery paper
- Torn paper
- Rough paper
- Thin paper with little stiffness
- Paper with a dusty surface

Even supported types of paper may cause paper jams or malfunctions if the paper is not in good condition.

If you copy or print onto rough grain paper, the output image might be blurred.

Do not use the copied or printed paper again. It may cause paper jam.

If you use paper curled by humidity or drying, the paper or staple may jam.

Do not load sheets that have already been printed onto by another machine. Doing so may interfere with loading of paper because the powder for preventing offset may attach to the paper roller.

#### Note

• A paper jam may occur depending on the condition of the paper even when using the recommended paper.

## Paper Storage

When storing paper, the following precautions should always be followed:

- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or reach high temperatures.
- Store paper in a dry environment (humidity: 70% or less).
- Store on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper vertically.
- Once opened, store paper in a plastic bag.

## **Saving Printouts**

- Prints will fade if exposed to strong light or dampness and humidity for extended periods of time. Preserve the quality of your copies by storing them in a binder in a dark, dry place.
- When folding prints, toner in the folds will come off.
- If the prints are stored in the conditions described below, toner may melt:
  - When a print and a half-dried print are put on top of each other
  - When solvent-type adhesive agents are used for pasting prints

- When prints are placed on mats made of chlorinated plastic in locations of high temperature for long periods of time
- When prints are placed in locations of extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater

# Thick Paper Orientation and Recommended Status

When using thick paper of  $106-220 \text{ g/m}^2$  (28 lb. Bond-80 lb. Cover), keep in mind the paper orientation or storage environment to prevent misfeeds and loss of image quality.

#### Paper Storage

- Temperature: 20-25°C (68-77°F)
- Humidity: 30-65%.

Do not use together paper that has been stored in different environments.

#### **Minimum Number of Sheets**

• 20 sheets or more (paper trays of the machine/optional paper feed unit used)

After loading paper, position the side fences flush against the paper stack.

## • Note

- When printing on thick, smooth paper, be sure to fan the paper thoroughly before loading. If you do not fan thick paper, jams and misfeeds can occur. If paper continues to become jammed or feed in together even after they are fanned, load them one by one from the bypass tray.
- Select [Thick Paper 1] or [Thick Paper 2] as the paper thickness in [Tray Paper Settings].
- Proper performance and quality may not be achieved under the recommended conditions depending on the paper.
- The printed sheet may curl. If the printed sheet curls, correct it.

# Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status

The way to place an original on the exposure glass and load envelopes varies depending on the shape and orientation of the envelopes.

#### C Important

- Do not print on the following envelopes:
  - Window envelopes
  - Envelopes with moisture

#### Before setting envelopes

• Before loading envelopes, press down on them to remove any air from inside and flatten out all four edges. If they are bent or curled, flatten their leading edges (the edge going into the machine) by running a pencil or ruler across them.

#### • Note

- For information about recommended envelopes, contact your local dealer.
- The Duplex function cannot be used with envelopes.
- Set the margins on the top, bottom, left and right to be 15 mm or more so as to print with adequate quality.
- An image may not be printed clearly on a sheet whose thickness is uneven. Print a few sheets and check the result.
- The printing result may not be adequate or the envelope may become wrinkled when the temperature or humidity is high.
- The printing result may not be adequate or output envelopes may become wrinkled depending on the printing environment even when using the recommended envelopes.
- When printing onto paper other than an envelope after printing onto several envelopes, you may have to wait about one minute until printing starts to allow the machine to make adjustments.

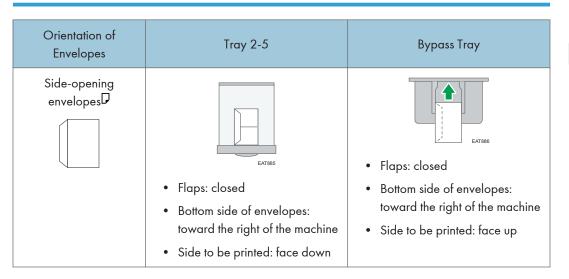
# Using the Copy Function

Orientation of Envelopes	Exposure Glass	Tray 2-5	Bypass Tray
Side-opening envelopesD	EAT884	EAT885	Flaps: closed
	Flaps: closed	Flaps: closed	Side to be printed: face
	Side to be scanned: face down	Side to be printed: face down	up

When loading envelopes, specify the envelope size and thickness.

page 87 "Copying Onto Envelopes"

# **Using the Printer Function**



# Loading Orientation-fixed Paper or Two-sided Paper

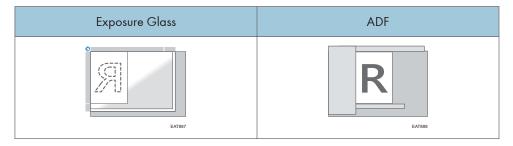
To print onto letterhead paper or business letter paper on which logos or patterns are printed, confirm how to set the paper or the settings of this machine so that the original is printed onto the orientationfixed (top to bottom) or two-sided paper correctly.

## **Copying onto Letterhead Paper**

Specify the settings of this machine as described below, and then place an original and load the paper.

• [Copier / Document Server Settings] ► [Input / Output] tab ► [Letterhead Setting] ► [Yes]

#### **Original Orientation**



#### **Paper Orientation**

Copy Side	Tray 1 Paper Feed Unit	Bypass Tray <sup>*2</sup>
One-sided originals		
Two-sided originals * 1	<u></u>	

\*1 When printing the first page onto the letterhead side

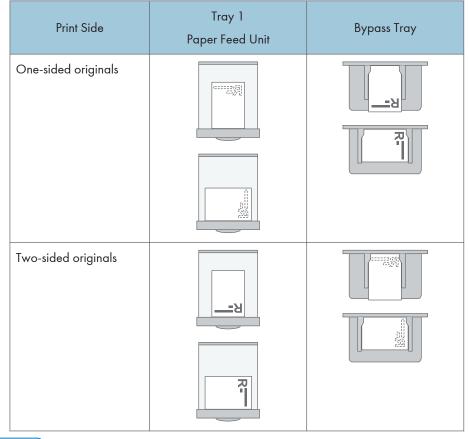
\*2 If you place originals in the ADF and copy on orientation-fixed paper from the bypass tray without specifying the paper size, the image might be copied upside down. In order to make copies correctly, place the paper upside down or specify the paper size.

# Printing onto Letterhead Paper Using the Printer Driver

Specify the settings of this machine as described below.

• [Printer Settings] ► [System] tab ► [Letterhead Setting] ► [Auto Detect]

#### **Paper Orientation**



#### Note

- When you specify [Letterhead Setting] to [On (Always)], you can print onto letterhead paper without specifying the paper type in the printer driver's settings to [Letterhead].
- If a print job is changed partway through printing from one-sided to two-sided printing, one-sided output after the first copy may be printed facing a different direction. To ensure all paper is output facing the same direction, specify different input trays for one-sided and two-sided printing. Note also that two-sided printing must be disabled for the tray specified for one-sided printing.

# **Recommended Original Size and Weight**

Original location	Original size	Original weight
Exposure glass	Up to A4 $\Box$ , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14 $\Box$	-
ADF *1	A4 $\Box$ -A6 $\Box$ 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14 $\Box$ -5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> $\Box$	50–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13–44 lb. Cover)

\*1 About 100 originals can be loaded on the ADF. Specifications can vary depending on the type and condition of the paper.

#### Vote

- An original whose size is within the range of the maximum original scan area can be placed.
- Place originals in the ADF if they are 356 mm (14.0 inches) along the feed direction. If you place them on the exposure glass, the machine will scan only within the maximum scanning size.
- page 298 "Specifications for the Main Unit"
- On all sides of the original, there is a missing image area. Even if you place originals on the
  exposure glass or in the ADF correctly, the missing image area on all four sides of the original
  might not be copied.
- page 298 "Specifications for the Main Unit"
- You can place originals of two different sizes only in Mixed Sizes mode.

# **Replacing the Toner**

Toner is almost depleted when the "Check you have a print cartridge replacement(s)." message is displayed. Prepare a replacement print cartridge.

See "Checking Inquiry Information", User Guide (Full Version).

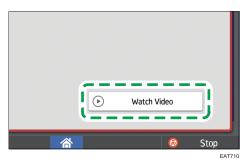
#### 🔁 Important

- Replace the toner after the message prompting replacement is displayed on the control panel.
- The machine may become damaged if you use toner of a different type.
- Do not turn off the power of the machine when replacing the toner. If you turn off the power when replenishing the toner, the specified settings are canceled, and printing will not resume afterwards.
- Store the toner in a dry environment away from direct sunlight and generally under the temperature below 35°C (95°F).
- Keep the toner horizontal when storing it.
- After removing the print cartridge from the machine, do not shake it while its opening is facing downward. The remaining toner may spill out.
- Do not pull out and put back the print cartridge repeatedly. The remaining toner may leak.
- Follow the procedure displayed on the screen to replenish the toner.

# Watching the Video for Replacing the Toner

See the video displayed on the control panel of the machine for the procedure to replace the toner.

1. Press [Watch Video].



To display this screen again, press [Check Status] and then press [Check] under "Mach. Status" on the [Mach./Applic. Stat] tab.

2. Press the play key.



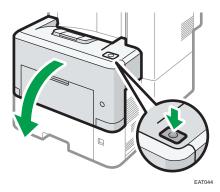
3. Replace the toner by following the procedure shown in the video.

## Note

- You can transmit data in the fax or scanner function even after the toner runs out. However, you cannot transmit a fax when the number of times of reception and transmission performed in the fax function after the toner has run out and the number of times of communication not recorded in the Records exceeds a total of 200. Replace the toner earlier.
- While the message prompting you to replace the toner is displayed, Memory Storage Report for Memory Transmission will not be printed.

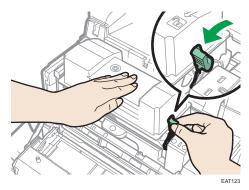
# How to Replace the Toner

1. Open the front cover.

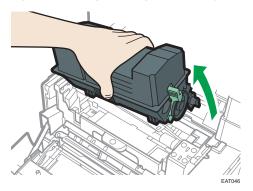


8

2. Hold the print cartridge with one hand as you release the print cartridge lever with another hand.



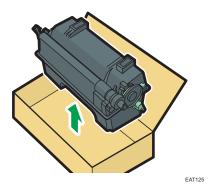
3. Squeeze the clip on the print cartridge and lift it.



4. Put the used print cartridge in a plastic bag and seal it so that the toner does not spill out.



5. Remove the new print cartridge from the toner kit.



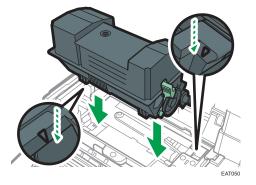
8

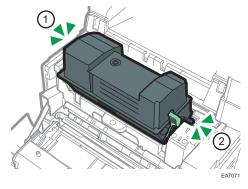
6. Shake the new print cartridge at least 10 times to the left and right so that the toner inside it spreads uniformly.



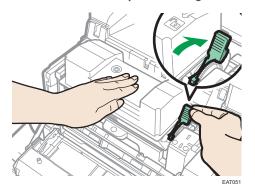
7. Insert the new print cartridge into the machine.

Press the new print cartridge until it clicks into place.





8. Lock the lever of the print cartridge.



9. Close the front cover.

# **Precautions When Storing Toner**

# **WARNING**

• Do not store toner (new or used) or toner containers while toner is inside in a place with an open flame. The toner can ignite and result in burns or fire.

# 

- Do not leave the following items in a place where children can reach them:
  - Toner (new or used)
  - Toner containers while toner is inside
  - Toner-attached parts

# Precautions When Replacing the Toner

# **WARNING**

- Do not dispose of the following items into a fire. Toner will ignite on contact with naked flame and burns can result.
  - Toner (new or used)
  - Toner containers while toner is inside
  - Toner-attached parts

# **WARNING**

- Do not absorb spilled toner (including used toner) using a vacuum cleaner. Absorbed toner may
  cause ignition or explosion due to electric contact sparks inside the vacuum cleaner. However,
  you can use a toner-compatible industrial vacuum cleaner. When toner is spilled, remove the
  spilled toner using a wet cloth so that the toner is not scattered.
- The following explains the warning messages on the plastic bag used in this product's packaging:
  - Do not leave the polythene materials (bags, etc.) supplied with this machine close to babies and small children. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

# 

- When the following occurs while toner is handled, receive emergency measures first, and then consult a doctor if necessary.
  - When inhaling toner, gargle with a large amount of water and move into a fresh air environment.
  - When swallowing toner, dilute gastric contents with a large amount of water.
  - When getting toner into your eyes, flush them with a large amount of water.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), make sure not to inhale toner.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), be careful not to have toner dirt your skin or clothes.
- If toner (new or used) comes into contact with your skin or clothes and smears them, take the following actions:
  - If toner comes into contact with your skin, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
  - If toner comes into contact with your clothes, wash the stained area with cold water. Heating the stained area by applying hot water will set the toner into the fabric and removing the stain may become impossible.
- When replacing a container with toner (including used toner) or consumables with toner, be careful that the toner does not splatter. After removing used consumables and shutting the lid of the container if the lid is available, put them in a bag.
- Do not open toner containers forcibly while toner is inside, crush or squeeze them. Toner spillage can cause accidental ingestion or dirtying of clothes, hands, or floor.

# **Disposing Exhausted Toners**

You cannot reuse exhausted toners.

When disposing a depleted print cartridge, place the cartridge in a box or plastic bag while paying attention not to spill any toner powder.

Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)

If you want to discard your used toner container, please contact your local sales office. If you discard it by yourself, treat it as general plastic waste material.

(mainly North America)

Please see our local company website for information on the recycling of supply products, or you can recycle items according to the requirements of your local municipalities or private recyclers.

# **Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle**

The waste toner bottle needs to be replaced when the "Waste Toner Bottle is almost full." message is displayed.

See "Checking Inquiry Information", User Guide (Full Version).

# Watching the Video for Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle

See the video displayed on the control panel of the machine for the procedure to replace the waste toner bottle.

1. Press [Watch Video].



To display this screen again, press [Check Status] and then press [Check] under "Mach. Status" on the [Mach./Applic. Stat] tab.

2. Press the play key.



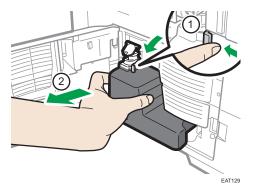
3. Replace the waste toner bottle by following the procedure shown in the video.

# How to Replace the Waste Toner Bottle

1. Open the left cover.

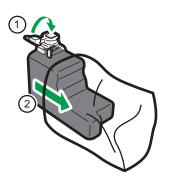


2. Remove the waste toner bottle from the machine.

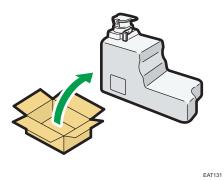


3. Close the bottle cap and put the full waste toner bottle in a plastic bag and seal it so that the toner does not spill out.

EAT130

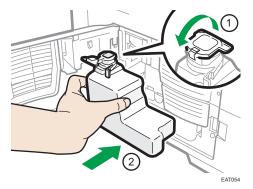


4. Remove the new waste toner bottle from the toner kit.

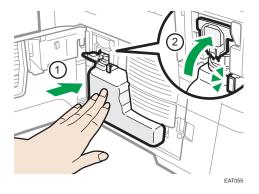


5. Open the bottle cap and insert the new waste toner bottle into the machine.

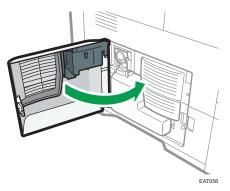
Leave the cap open.



Press the new waste toner bottle until it clicks into place.



6. Close the left cover.



# Precautions When Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle

# **WARNING**

- Do not store toner (new or used) or toner containers while toner is inside in a place with an open flame. The toner can ignite and result in burns or fire.
- Do not dispose of the following items into a fire. Toner will ignite on contact with naked flame and burns can result.
  - Toner (new or used)
  - Toner containers while toner is inside
  - Toner-attached parts
- Do not absorb spilled toner (including used toner) using a vacuum cleaner. Absorbed toner may
  cause ignition or explosion due to electric contact sparks inside the vacuum cleaner. However,
  you can use a toner-compatible industrial vacuum cleaner. When toner is spilled, remove the
  spilled toner using a wet cloth so that the toner is not scattered.
- The following explains the warning messages on the plastic bag used in this product's packaging:
  - Do not leave the polythene materials (bags, etc.) supplied with this machine close to babies and small children. Suffocation can result if polythene materials are brought into contact with the mouth or nose.

# 

- Do not leave the following items in a place where children can reach them:
  - Toner (new or used)
  - Toner containers while toner is inside
  - Toner-attached parts
- When the following occurs while toner is handled, receive emergency measures first, and then consult a doctor if necessary.
  - When inhaling toner, gargle with a large amount of water and move into a fresh air environment.
  - When swallowing toner, dilute gastric contents with a large amount of water.
  - When getting toner into your eyes, flush them with a large amount of water.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), make sure not to inhale toner.
- When removing jammed paper, replenishing or replacing toner (new or used), be careful not to have toner dirt your skin or clothes.
- If toner (new or used) comes into contact with your skin or clothes and smears them, take the following actions:
  - If toner comes into contact with your skin, wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water.
  - If toner comes into contact with your clothes, wash the stained area with cold water. Heating the stained area by applying hot water will set the toner into the fabric and removing the stain may become impossible.
- When replacing a container with toner (including used toner) or consumables with toner, be careful that the toner does not splatter. After removing used consumables and shutting the lid of the container if the lid is available, put them in a bag.
- Do not open toner containers forcibly while toner is inside, crush or squeeze them. Toner spillage can cause accidental ingestion or dirtying of clothes, hands, or floor.

#### 😭 Important

- You cannot reuse the waste toner bottle.
- To prevent the toner being spilled on the floor, table, or other object from the removed waste toner bottle, cover these objects with sheets of newspaper.

#### Disposing the Used Waste Toner Bottle

When disposing the used waste toner bottle, place the bottle in a box or plastic bag while paying attention not to spill any toner powder.

Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)

If you want to discard your used waste toner bottle, please contact your local sales office. If you discard it by yourself, treat it as general plastic waste material.

(mainly North America)

Please see our local company website for information on the recycling of supply products, or you can recycle items according to the requirements of your local municipalities or private recyclers.

8. Adding Paper and Toner

### **Alert Sounds**

The machine notifies you with an alert sound when a paper jam occurs, the original is left on the machine, or another problem occurs. Listen to the alert sound for one of the patterns described below, and perform the required procedure accordingly.

Sound pattern <sup>*1</sup>	Condition	Solution
A short beep	[Notification Sound] (operation tone) [Login]/[Logout]	-
A short beep, followed by long beep	[Operation Invalid]	<ul> <li>If you entered an incorrect password, enter the correct password.</li> <li>If you hear this sound when touching an icon or key, you do not have permission to use the function or setting. Log in to the machine as a user with permission, or consult your user administrator.</li> </ul>
A long beep	[Operation Completed] [Fax Printing Finished] [Fax Transmission Finished] [Fax Reception Finished]	Check the operation result.
Two long beeps	[Warm-up]	The machine is ready for use after the machine is turned on or recovers from the sleep mode.
Five long beeps	[Auto Reset]	The machine has been reset to the default state after the specified period of time has passed with the machine unoperated. If you were performing and paused an operation, perform the operation from the beginning again.

Sound pattern <sup>*1</sup>	Condition	Solution
Five long beeps (repeating four times)	[Sound of Less Urgent Level]	Check that an original is not left on the exposure glass and that paper is loaded in the paper tray.
Five short beeps (repeating five times)	[Sound of Urgent Level]	Check the message displayed on the screen, and resolve the problem such as paper jam, toner exchange, or others.
12 short beeps	[Blank Page Detected]	Check that the original is placed in the ADF with the side to scan facing up.

\*1 The factory default sound pattern is used as an example in the table above.

#### Note

- You cannot pause an alert sound that has started. The machine continues to emit the sound until the preset sound pattern is completed.
- You can specify the volume and type of alert sound in [Settings] ▶ [Screen Features Settings] ▶
   [Sound]. The type of sound can be specified for each condition described in the table above. You can also specify the volume of the sound emitted when using On-hook or Immediate Transmission to send a fax in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Fax Settings] ▶ [General Settings] tab ▶ [Adjust Sound Volume]. Press [Home] ( after specifying the settings.
- See "Setting the Sound Volume and Type", User Guide (Full Version).

### Checking the Indicators, Icons, and Messages on the Control Panel

The machine notifies you of the machine condition or status of an application with the [Check Status] indicator or a message displayed on the control panel. Check the status and resolve the problem accordingly.



[Check Status] indicator

DZC702

Message

Displays a message indicating the status of the machine or application. Press the message to display it in full text. You can also view more than one message as a list.

• [Check Status] indicator

If there is a problem such as a paper jam, the [Check Status] indicator lights up or flashes along with a message displayed on the screen. Press [Check Status] to check the status of the machine or application, and resolve the problem accordingly.

#### When an Icon Is Displayed with a Message

When you need to resolve a problem such as a paper jam, an icon is displayed at the beginning of a message. See the table below for the meaning of each icon.

lcon	Condition	Solution and reference
ł	Maintenance or repair is required.	Prepare for maintenance or consider repairing the machine.

lcon	Condition	Solution and reference
84	Paper is jammed.	See the animated illustration displayed on the control panel, and remove the jammed paper. page 291 "When Paper or an Original Is Jammed"
84	An original has jammed.	See the animated illustration displayed on the control panel, and remove the jammed original. page 291 "When Paper or an Original Is Jammed"
Ψ	Paper has run out.	Load paper into the paper tray. page 181 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"
<u>له</u>	Toner is almost depleted, or has run out.	<ul> <li>Prepare a replacement toner. Replace the toner when it runs out.</li> <li>page 203 "Replacing the Toner"</li> <li>Note</li> <li>If appears when there is a lot of toner, pull out the print cartridge by following the toner replacement procedure that is displayed on the screen, and then set it back again.</li> </ul>
Ś	The waste toner bottle is full, or almost full.	Prepare a replacement waste toner bottle. Replace the bottle when it becomes full. page 210 "Replacing the Waste Toner Bottle"
, the second sec	Staples have run out.	Prepare a cartridge for replacement, and load it when the staples run out. See "Replenishing the Staples (only for IM 600SRF)", User Guide (Full Version).
<b>*</b>	A cover is open.	Check that all covers of the machine and options are closed.

#### Vote

- For the names and the contact information of consumables, check [Settings] ▶ [Inquiry]. Press [Home] (<sup>™</sup>) after completing the operation to close [Settings].
- See "Checking Inquiry Information", User Guide (Full Version).

#### When the [Check Status] Indicator Is Lit or Flashing

The [Check Status] indicator notifies the user when the machine requires immediate attention.

#### Flashing in red

The machine is unavailable for use. Press [Check Status] and resolve the problem as soon as possible.

#### Flashing in yellow

Maintenance on the machine needs to be performed soon. Perform the required procedure accordingly.

You can display the status confirmation screen with [Check Status]. On the screen, check the detailed status of the machine or application.

1. Press [Check Status].



2. Press [Check] to check the details, and perform the required procedure. See "When an Icon is Displayed with a Message", User Guide (Full Version).

LONDON OFFICE	d/Waste Toner Bottle is full.	2	Logout
Mach/Applic. Stat	Current Job Job History	Maintnc/	Inquiry/Mach.
Mach. Status	🛕 Waste Toner Bottle Full	i	Check
Network	IPv4 Address: *C2: FE IR2 LX:     IPv6 Inactive	i	
Copier	Error Occurred	- 1	
Scanner	Ready	I	
Fax	Ready	I	
Printer	Error Occurred	l	Check
Check Status	28 2018 СОАМ	0	SIUP
			DZ

A: The machine cannot be used.

#### 9. Troubleshooting

• Some of the functions cannot be used, or the toner is almost depleted.

Vote

• Depending on the machine condition, such as a paper jam or open cover, the status confirmation screen may be displayed automatically without pressing [Check Status].

### When the Machine Cannot Be Operated

#### Note

- If a message is displayed on the screen, check the message.
- page 229 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated"
- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (<sup>(Ch)</sup>) after completing the operation to close [Settings].

## When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation on the Control Panel

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The screen of the control panel is not lit.	The machine is in the sleep mode.	Touch the screen.
Nothing is displayed when you touch the screen.	The power of the machine is turned off.	Check that the main power indicator is not lit, and then turn on the main power of the machine. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
The power of the machine does not come on.	The power cable is unplugged from the wall outlet.	Connect the ground wire, and plug the power cable into the wall outlet. See "Installation Requirements After Moving the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
	The machine is connected to an extension cord.	You cannot use an extension cord. After checking that the screen is not lit when you touch it and the main power indicator is unlit, remove the extension cord and plug the power cable directly into the wall outlet.
	There may be a problem with the wall outlet.	After checking that the screen is not lit when you touch it and the main power indicator is unlit, plug the power cord into a confirmed operating wall outlet.

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
Only the copy icon is displayed when the machine is turned on.	The functions other than the copy function are starting up.	The time required for a function to start up varies depending on the function. Wait a while.
Only some of the menu items are displayed when you press [Settings] after turning on the power of the machine.	The functions other than the copy function are starting up.	The time required for a function to start up varies depending on the function. More items on the menu in [Settings] are displayed as the functions start up. Wait a while.
The login screen is displayed.	Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is specified.	Enter the login user name and password, and then press [Login]. For the login user name and password, consult the user administrator.
		page 62 "Logging In from the Control Panel"
The User Code entry screen is displayed.	User Code authentication is specified.	Enter the User Code, and press [OK]. Consult the user administrator for the user code.
A function is not executed, or you cannot perform an operation.	Another function that cannot be used with the specified function at the same time is being executed.	Wait for the function in progress to end, and then perform the next operation. For details about functions that cannot be used at the same time, see the following section: page 330 "Function Compatibility"
		When a backup of the address book is being created using Web Image Monitor or another method, the next function is executed after the backup is completed.
The key is unresponsive, or another key is activated.	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power again.
You cannot interrupt copying even after pressing [Stop] while the copy function is operating.		page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
You cannot interrupt copying or scanning even after pressing [Stop], and the login screen is displayed.	Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, or LDAP Authentication is specified, and the user who started the copying or scanning operation has logged out.	Log in to the machine as the user who started the copying or scanning operation or as the machine administrator, and press [Stop].
Help is not displayed when you press [Help] ([?]).	The application that is currently in use does not support the help function, or is grayed out because "Paper Misfeed" or another message is being displayed.	The help function cannot be used when is grayed out. Close the application or message, and then try again.
	is grayed out because the user does not have permission to use the browser function.	The help function cannot be used if the user does not have permission to use the browser function. If is always grayed out, consult the user administrator to check whether you have permission to use the browser function. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book.
		See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
The screen changes to Web Browser when you press [Help] (?), but the help content is not displayed.	The machine is not connected to the network correctly.	Check if you can display a web page in [Web Browser]. If a web page cannot be displayed, check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. See "Selecting the Network Connection Method", User Guide (Full Version).
	The browser is configured not to save cookies.	Check that the [Web Browser] ▶ [Menu] (♥) ▶ [Settings] ▶ [Privacy & security] ▶ [Accept cookies] check box is selected.

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The screen remains turned on and the machine does not enter the sleep mode when you press [Energy Save] ().	The machine is in a condition that does not allow the machine to enter the sleep mode.	Check the conditions in which the machine does not enter the sleep mode. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
Originals are misfed in the ADF.	More than sixty originals were placed in the ADF forcibly.	<ul> <li>Remove all the originals, open and close the cover of the ADF, and then place originals in the ADF again.</li> <li>Do not forcibly load originals into the ADF.</li> <li>If the problem persists, reduce the number of originals that you place in the ADF.</li> </ul>
The machine does not shut down when more than four minutes have passed after you press the main power switch.	The shutdown operation could not be performed normally.	Press the main power switch again.
The power of the machine is turned off automatically.	[Main Power Off] is specified in the weekly timer.	Check [Weekly Timer Easy Settings] and [Weekly Timer Detailed Settings] on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Timer Settings] tab.

## When the Machine Does Not Respond Correctly to an Operation from a Computer

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
When using the address book from Device Manager NX, an incorrect password error is displayed even when you enter the correct login user name and password.	A certificate is not installed on the computer when SSL/TLS is enabled on the machine.	Install the certificate on the computer. Consult your network administrator for the certificate.
	An item other than [Simple Encryption] is specified in [Extended Security].	Specify [Simple Encryption] in "Driver Encryption Key:Encryption Strength" in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Extended Security].
You cannot access the machine using Web Image Monitor.	There is a problem with the connection between the machine and the computer.	Check the cable connecting the machine and the computer, and disconnect and then connect the cable again. Also, check the connection to the hub or router, and turn off and on the power of the device if possible. Next, turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
	A proxy server is not specified.	In the proxy setting of the Web browser, specify the IP address of the machine as an exception. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ▶ "Network".

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
"There is a problem with this website's security certificate." is displayed and you cannot connect to the machine when accessing the machine using Web Image Monitor.	[Permit SSL / TLS Communication] is set to [Ciphertext Only].	<ul> <li>Click [Continue to this website (not recommended).].</li> <li>To specify not to display the message, log in to the machine in the administrator mode, and specify [Ciphertext / Cleartext] in [SSL/TLS]</li> <li>         "Permit SSL / TLS Communication" under [Device Management]         [Configuration]         "Security".     </li> </ul>
	"https" is entered at the beginning of the URL.	Do not enter "s" after "http".

### When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Service Call" SCxxx-xx Contact Serial No. of Machine	The machine needs to be repaired.	Consider repairing the machine.
"Functional Problems" SCxxx-xx Contact Serial No. of Machine	A malfunction that requires maintenance or repair has occurred.	<ul> <li>Prepare for maintenance or consider repairing the machine.</li> <li>If a message prompts you to turn the power of the machine off and then on, the problem may be resolved by turning off the power, waiting for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turning on the power.</li> <li>page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"</li> <li>When "Press [Cancel] to cancel mode" is displayed, you can continue using the machine except for the function in which the malfunction is occurring after pressing [Cancel].</li> </ul>
"Please wait."	The machine is recovering from the sleep mode.	Wait a while. Turn off the power of the machine if the message persists after five minutes, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Please wait."	The machine is preparing to perform a function or executing the image stabilization process.	Wait a while and do not turn off the power of the machine.
	The ambient temperature is outside the temperature range specified for the machine operation.	Check the room temperature and whether it satisfies the operational requirements of the machine. If the machine has just been moved to the current location, leave it be for some time and allow it to adapt to the environment before use.
		See "Installation Requirements After Moving the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
		If the message persists after five minutes even when the room temperature is within the specifications, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Please wait."	A consumable or supply such as the toner has been replenished.	Wait a while and do not turn off the power of the machine. Turn off the power of the machine if the message persists after five minutes, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. If the message remains displayed for more than 5 minutes, consult your service representative. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Shutting down Please wait. Main power will be turned off automatically. Maximum waiting time: four minute(s)"	The power of the machine was turned off while the machine was starting up or in the standby mode.	Wait until the power is turned off.

#### • Note

• If the message persists even after you have performed the operations as instructed in the following message, a malfunction may temporarily occur on the machine. Turn off the power of the machine,

wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.

- page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
  - "Cover Open"
  - "Add Toner"/"Add Staples"
  - "Replace Waste Toner Bottle"
  - "Original left on exposure glass."
  - "No Paper"

# When a Message Appears While Using the Copy Function

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Original is too long. Cannot scan 2 sides."	A paper size that is not supported in 2-Sided copying or the specified finishing type is specified.	Check the paper size supported in 2-Sided copying and the specified finishing type and load the supported paper. page 298 "List of Specifications"
"Exceeded the maximum number of sheets that can be used. Copying will be stopped."	When the copy volume use limitation is enabled, copying was canceled because the copy volume of the user exceeded the upper limit allotted for the user.	For details about the copy volume use limitation, consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the limit on the copy volume use. See "Specifying Maximum Print Volume Use of Each User", User Guide (Full Version).
"Set next original(s), then press [Start]. After scanning last original, press [Finish Scn]."	Duplex copying is specified.	When not copying onto both sides of paper, clear the [1 sided→2 sided] and [2 sided→2 sided] check boxes.
"Stapling capacity exceeded."	The number of sheets that can be stapled together is exceeded.	Check the number of sheets that can stapled together at a time, and reduce the number of sheets in the original placed on the machine.
		Staple capacity (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 20 lb. Bond):
		• 30 sheets: $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14^{D}$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{D}$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 14^{D}$ , $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13^{D}$ , $8 \times 13^{D}$ , $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{2}/_{5}^{D}$
		<ul> <li>50 sheets: A4D, B5 JISD, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, 7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> × 10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>D, 16KD</li> </ul>

#### • Note

- If you set [On] in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Copier / Document Server Settings]
   ▶ [Input / Output] tab ▶ [Memory Full Auto Scan Restart], even if the memory becomes full, the memory overflow message will not be displayed. The machine will make copies of the scanned originals first, and then automatically proceed to scan and to copy the remaining originals. In this case, the resulting sorted pages will not be sequential.
- See "Input / Output", User Guide (Full Version).

# When a Message Appears While Using Document Server

For details about the messages that are displayed when printing a document, see the descriptions of the messages that are displayed in the copy function.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot delete the folder because it contains locked files. Please contact the file administrator."	The folder contains a locked document.	Request the file administrator to unlock the document. The file administrator can unlock documents. See "Specifying Access Privileges for
		Documents Stored in Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Cannot display preview of this page."	The format of the image data is corrupted.	Press [Confirm] to display the preview screen without a thumbnail. If the image data comprises multiple pages, press [Switch Display Page] to display a different page.
"Magazine or Booklet mode cannot be used for data stored with mixed functions."	A document scanned in the copy function and a document stored in the printer function are selected together, and [Booklet] or [Magazine] is specified.	You cannot specify [Booklet] or [Magazine] to the document comprising data stored in the different functions.
"The selected folder is locked. Please contact the file administrator."	The wrong password was entered 10 times while performing operation on a password-protected folder, and the folder is locked.	Request the file administrator to unlock the folder. The file administrator can unlock folders. See "Managing Folders as a File Administrator", User Guide (Full Version).

page 232 "When a Message Appears	While Using the Copy Function"
----------------------------------	--------------------------------

# When a Message Appears While Using the Fax Function

#### Note

- When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (🕋) after closing [Settings].
- If the paper tray runs out of paper, "There is no paper. Load paper." appears on the screen, prompting you to add paper. If there is paper left in the other trays, you can receive documents as usual, even if the message appears on the screen. You can turn this function on or off with "Parameter Settings"
- See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- If "Check whether there are any network problems." appears, the machine is not correctly
  connected to the network or the settings of the machine are not correct. If you do not need to
  connect to a network, you can specify the setting so this message is not displayed, and then [Check
  Status] no longer lights up.
- See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- If you reconnect the machine to the network, be sure to set "Display" by configuring the appropriate user parameter.

#### Messages that Appear During Operation or When Sending/Receiving a Fax Cannot Be Performed

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Cannot receive emails currently."	The machine is receiving an On-demand Email Notification (a query e- mail from the administrator), and manual reception cannot be performed.	Wait a while, and press [Manual Reception: Email].

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Error occurred, and transmission was	An original had jammed while sending a fax.	Press [Confirm], remove the jammed original, and then send the fax again.
cancelled."	An error occurred temporarily in the machine, or there was interference on the line such as excessive noise or cross-talk.	Press [Confirm] and send the fax again.
"Functional problem occurred. Stopped processing. Please try again later."	The power of the machine was lost while receiving an Internet Fax.	Even if you turn on the power immediately, you may not be able to resume reception until the timeout duration has passed depending on the settings of the e-mail server. Wait a while. To receive the fax manually, wait until the duration has passed and then operate the machine to perform reception. For the timeout duration, consult the administrator.
"Memory is full. Cannot scan more. Transmitting only scanned pages."	The memory is full.	Press [Confirm] to return to the stand-by state and start sending the pages that are already scanned and stored. Check the transmission result report for unsent pages, and send those pages later.
"Some invalid destination(s) contained. Do you want to select only valid destination(s)?"	A folder destination is included in the group.	When sending a fax to a destination other than a folder destination, press [Select].

#### **Vote**

- When the JPEG/PDF file that is attached to an e-mail is sent to the machine, check the message and resolve the problem accordingly.
- page 249 "When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function"

#### Messages that Appear When the Machine Cannot Connect to the Network

For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.

9

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Cannot access the SIP server. Please check the address setting of the SIP server or the SIP server settings."	The SIP server could not be accessed.	Specify the correct "SIP Server IP Address" in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Fax Settings] ▶ [Initial Settings] tab ▶ [SIP Settings]. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Cannot connect to the destination normally because there is no IP-FAX function compatibility between the destination and this machine."	The destination device is unable to connect with the IP-Fax function of the machine.	Sending a fax using the IP-Fax function is not possible. Send the fax using the G3 line if possible.
"Network communication has failed. Cannot register this machine to SIP server. Please check the address setting of the SIP server or other settings of the SIP server."	The SIP server rejected the registration of the user name.	Specify the correct "SIP Server IP Address" and "SIP User Name" in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Fax Settings] ▶ [Initial Settings] tab ▶ [SIP Settings]. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to POP/IMAP server. Please check	The POP3 (IMAP4) server could not be found.	Check the settings in [Reception Protocol], [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings] and [Email Communication Port] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [File Transfer] tab.
machine settings and the status of server and network."	The DNS server could not be found.	Check the [DNS Configuration] setting on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Interface Settings] tab.
	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to the destination. Please check if the destination is correct and	The SMTP server could not be found.	Check [SMTP Server] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [File Transfer] tab.
	The DNS server could not be found.	Check [DNS Configuration] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Interface Settings] tab.
destination machine status."	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.
	Communication with the destination specified for Folder Transfer could not be established properly.	<ul> <li>Check that the computer specified as the transfer destination is operating normally and connected to the network.</li> <li>Check the transfer settings. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E-mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
	The destination could not be found when the fax was sent without using the SMTP server.	Check that the destination is specified correctly. See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to connect to the destination folder. Please check if the	The shared folder specified as the destination of Folder Transfer cannot be found.	Specify the destination from the address book, press [Edit], and check that the setting in the [Destinations] tab ▶ [Folder] matches the folder name or path of the shared folder on the destination computer.
destination is correct and destination machine settings."		If the shared folder on the destination computer has been deleted, create the folder. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E- mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check a destination machine status and both authentication setting of destination machine and this machine."	A malfunction is occurring on the SMTP server or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the computer specified as the transfer destination are functioning normally.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check destination machine status and remaining memory."	No free space is available on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that free space is available on the SMTP server and the destination computer.
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send.	The specified destination does not exist.	Check the destination e-mail address, and specify again if necessary.
Please check if the destination is correct."	The destination could not be found when the fax was sent without using the SMTP server.	Check that the destination is specified correctly. See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check status and settings of the destination machine."	A malfunction is occurring on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the destination computer are functioning normally.

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check the access privilege setting of the destination."	A malfunction is occurring on an SMTP server, the computer specified as the destination for Folder Transfer, or the computer specified as the destination when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	Check that the SMTP server and the destination computers are functioning normally.
	The shared folder specified as the transfer destination cannot be found in Folder Transfer.	Creating a shared folder on the destination computer. To check the folder name, select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and see "Path Name" in [Destinations] tab ► [Folder]. See "Transferring a Received Fax Document to E- mail Address or Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
	The user name and/or password registered in the address book are invalid when performing Folder Transfer.	Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and specify [Destinations] tab ▶ [Folder] ▶ [Folder Authentication Info] again. See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check the administrator email address setting."	The administrator e- mail address is not registered when the machine is configured to send Records by e- mail.	<ul> <li>Specify [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [File Transfer] tab ► [Administrator's Email Address].</li> <li>When configuring the machine to not send Records by e-mail, change the Current Value of Bit Number [4] under Switch Number [21] in [Parameter Settings].</li> <li>See "Viewing the History of Sent and Received Faxes", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. Please check user name and password."	The user name and/or password registered in the address book are invalid when performing Folder Transfer.	Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and specify [Destinations] tab ▶ [Folder] ▶ [Folder Authentication Info] again. See "Registering the Destination Folder to Use for Send to Folder", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. The registration of fax email address or administrator email address is required."	Both the e-mail address to use for sending and receiving e-mails and the administrator e-mail address are not registered when sending an e-mail.	Specify [Fax Email Account] or [Administrator's Email Address] on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab. See "Sending and Receiving Documents by Internet Fax", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. Failed to send. The specified address is invalid."	A domain name was not specified when sending an e-mail without using the SMTP server.	<ul> <li>Specify a host name or IP address as the destination, and send the e-mail again.</li> <li>When you specified the destination from the address book, select destination in the address book, press [Edit], and then check the settings in "Send via SMTP Server" and "SMTP Authentication Info" in [Destinations] tab ▶ [Email Address].</li> <li>See "Sending Internet Faxes without Using SMTP Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"Network communication has failed. Fax email account is not registered. Please check settings."	[Fax Email Account] is not specified.	Specify the settings in "User Name" and "Password" in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [Fax Email Account].
"Network communication has failed. Fax email address is not registered. Please check settings."	[Fax Email Account] is not specified.	Register Email Address in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [Fax Email Account].

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. No response from the destination. Please check the cable connection and if the network equipment is turned on."	The destination device did not respond.	<ul> <li>Check that the computer specified as the destination is operating normally and connected to the network.</li> <li>Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.</li> </ul>
"Network communication has failed. POP/IMAP server authentication error has occurred. Please check email account and password."	A login attempt to the POP3 (IMAP4) server failed.	Specify the setting in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings].
"Network communication has failed. POP/IMAP server is not registered. Please check settings."	The POP3 (IMAP4) server address is not registered.	Specify the setting in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings].
"Network communication has failed. S/MIME certificate error has	A user certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install the correct user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
occurred. Please check the certificate of both destination and this machine."	A device certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install the correct device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. SIP digest authentication failed. Please check the SIP digest authentication user name and password."	The authentication password on the SIP server and the password registered on the machine do not match.	Check that the password registered on the SIP server and "Password" in SIP Digest Authentication under [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Fax Settings] ▶ [Initial Settings] tab ▶ [SIP Settings] match. See "Sending Documents by IP-Fax", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of destination is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	The user certificate (destination certificate) has expired.	Install a new user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of this machine is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	A device certificate (destination certificate) is not registered or has expired.	Install a new device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The certificate of this machine or destination machine is not currently valid. Please re-issue it."	The user certificate (destination certificate) and device certificate have expired.	Install a new user certificate and device certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The destination does not support IP- FAX."	An IP-Fax was sent to a destination that does not support IP-Fax.	Sending a fax using the IP-Fax function is not possible. Send the fax using the G3 line if possible.
"Network communication has failed. The IP address is invalid. Please check the network settings."	An invalid IP address is registered.	Specify the correct [Effective Protocol] and [Machine IPv4 Address], or [Machine IPv6 Address] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Interface Settings] tab. See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Network communication has failed. The IP address may be invalid. Please check the network settings."	The settings in [SIP Server IP Address] and [Effective Protocol] do not match.	Check that SIP Server IP Address in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Initial Settings] tab ► [SIP Settings] and [Effective Protocol] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Interface Settings] tab are correct.
	An invalid IP address is registered.	Specify the correct [Machine IPv4 Address], or [Machine IPv6 Address] on the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Interface Settings] tab.
		See "Connecting to a Wired LAN", User Guide (Full Version).
"Network communication has failed. The line has been disconnected. Please check the destination and caller ID notification setting."	The destination terminated the communication.	<ul> <li>Check that the destination is specified correctly.</li> <li>If the destination refuses to receive a fax with no sender information, enable notifying of the information and send the fax again.</li> </ul>
"Network communication has failed. The mail address for authentication does not match with administrator's one. Please check the settings."	When a signature is specified, the SMTP authentication e-mail address or POP before SMTP authentication e-mail address does not match the administrator e-mail address.	Check that the authentication e-mail address matches the address specified in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [File Transfer] tab ► [Administrator's Email Address]. See "Machine Status Notification by E-mail", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
are any network conn problems." network [15-11] The formation of the serve found The f	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine correctly.
	The POP3 (IMAP4) server could not be found.	Check the settings in [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings], [Email Communication Port] and [Reception Protocol] on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab.
	The DNS server could not be found.	Check the [DNS Configuration] setting on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Interface Settings] tab.

#### **Vote**

- Change the Current Value to [1] under Switch Number [21] and Bit Number [6] in [Settings]
   [Machine Features Settings] ► [Fax Settings] ► [Initial Settings] tab ► [Parameter Settings] to disable displaying the "Network communication has failed." message. Change the setting when you are not using the IP-Fax or Internet Fax function.
- See "Changing the Parameter Settings", User Guide (Full Version).

#### Messages that Appear When the Remote Fax Function Is Unavailable

For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.

#### When a message that appear on the main-machine

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Check whether there are any network problems." [16-00]	The machine is not connected to the network.	<ul> <li>Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.</li> <li>Press [Confirm] to use the G3 fax.</li> </ul>

Another main-machine is registered in [Remote	Register the sub-machine in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features
Machine].	[Settings] ► [Machine reduces Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine].
Another main-machine is registered in [Remote Machine] on the sub- machine.	Register the machine in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.
A network error occurred while transferring the data.	<ul> <li>Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.</li> <li>Check that the sub-machine is connected to the network and for the</li></ul>
	<ul> <li>functioning normally.</li> <li>Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Program/ Change/Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.</li> <li>Check that the LAN cable is correctly connected to the</li> </ul>
	registered in [Remote Machine] on the sub- machine. A network error occurred

#### When a message that appear on the sub-machine

Message	Condition	Solution and reference	
"Authentication with remote machine failed. Check remote machine's authentication settings."	Authentication failed when user authentication is enabled on the main- machine, or the user does not have permission to use the fax function.	Specify the same user authentication setting as the main-machine, and register a user who has the permission to use the fax function. See "Verifying Users to Operate the Machine (User Authentication)", User Guide (Full Version).	
"Check whether there are any network problems." [16-00]	The machine is not connected to the network.	Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.	
"Connection with the remote machine has failed. Check the remote machine status."	The main-machine is turned off, or not functioning normally.	Turn on the power of the main- machine. If the power is turned on, check that the device is functioning normally.	
	A network error occurred.	Check that the machine and the main-machine are connected to the network correctly.	
	A timeout error occurred while connecting to the main-machine.	Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine] on the sub-machine.	

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Connection with the remote machine has failed. There is a problem with the remote machine structure. Contact the administrator."	Another sub-machine is registered in [Remote Machine].	Register the main-machine in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine].
	The machine is not registered in [Remote Machine] on the main- machine.	Register the machine in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine] on the main-machine.
"Remote fax is not available because [User Code Authentication] is active."	User Code authentication is specified.	User Code authentication is not supported on both the main- machine and sub-machine. Consider another method of user authentication.
"Remote machine registration is incorrect. Contact the administrator."	The main-machine could not be found.	Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine].

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Transfer error has occurred. Check status of remote machine."	A network error occurred while transferring the data.	<ul> <li>Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Check that the main-machine is connected to the network and functioning normally.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Check that the IP address or host name of the main-machine is specified correctly in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Program / Change / Delete Remote Machine].</li> </ul>
"Transfer error has occurred. Check status of remote machine."	There is no free space available on the hard disk of the main-machine.	Delete files that are no longer needed on the main-machine.
"The HDD of the remote machine is full."		

# When a Message Appears While Using the Printer Function

#### Note

• When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (1) after closing [Settings].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Address Book is currently in use by another function. Authentication has failed."	The address book is in use by another function, and authentication query is not possible.	Try again later.
"A job via the network that was not printed exists because an error occurred. It was stored as a job not printed."	When the error job storing function is enabled, an error occurred in the print job sent via the network and the canceled job was stored.	<ul> <li>Check that the machine is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.</li> <li>The stored document can be printed. page 141 "Printing Documents Stored in the Printer from the Control Panel"</li> </ul>
"All the remaining print volume has been allocated to another central managed client(s). The job has been cancelled."	The job was canceled because the usage count information could not be obtained from the Central Management machine.	All job slots are occupied by other devices. Check the status of the client machine.
"An error occurred while printing a job with Background Numbering. The job has been cancelled."	A size that is impossible to print was specified.	Specify a size smaller than 216.0 mm (8.5 inches) wide and 356.0 mm (14.0 inches) long in "Print On:" in the printer driver. When [Same as Original Size] is specified in "Print On:", reduce the size specified in "Print On:" or adjust the size in the application.

#### Messages that Appear without Error Codes

9

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"An error occurred while processing an Unauthorized Copy Prevention job. The job was cancelled."	The settings in the printer driver are incorrect.	<ul> <li>Check the following in the printer driver:</li> <li>Is a value smaller than 600 dpi specified in [Resolution]?</li> <li>See "Applying Different Print Settings Depending on the Document Type", User Guide (Full Version).</li> <li>Is only space(s) entered as the text to use for the background pattern in the unauthorized copy prevention function?</li> <li>Is Document Server specified as the print method? See "Storing Documents to Print in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
	Unauthorized copy prevention is given priority in the [Administrator Tools] tab.	Consult the device administrator for the settings of the machine. The machine administrator can change the setting in [Unauthorized Copy Prevention Printing: Printer]. See "Administrator Tools (System Settings)", User Guide (Full Version).
"Auto-registration of user information has failed."	The maximum number of items that can be registered has been exceeded and the authentication information for LDAP authentication or Windows authentication cannot be registered automatically.	Delete a user that is no longer necessary from the address book.
"Cannot access the Memory Storage Device."	An SD card or USB flash memory device is unavailable for use.	<ul> <li>Check that the external media is formatted in FAT16 or FAT32, and write protection is not enabled on the media.</li> <li>Check that the external media is not corrupted or damaged.</li> </ul>

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Cannot store data of this size."	The paper size is too large.	Reduce the paper size of the document to send. The document to send cannot be stored at a custom size.
"Classification Code is incorrect. The job has been cancelled."	A classification code is not specified.	Consult the machine administrator for the classification code, and enter the code in "Classification Code" on the [Detailed Settings] tab ▶ [Job Setup] menu in the printer driver.
	The document was printed in a printer driver that does not support the classification code.	Request the machine administrator to change the setting of the classification code. Machine administrator: Change the [Classification Code] to [Optional] in Web Image Monitor if necessary. See "Managing the Number of Printed Sheets Using the Classification Code", User Guide (Full Version).
"Collate has been cancelled."	The sort function was canceled.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Command Error"	A problem occurred in the data because of the communication status or another reason.	Check that the machine can communicate with the computer properly.
	A printer driver that does not support the machine was used.	Use the printer driver for the machine. Obtain and install the latest version of the driver.
"Communication error with central management server has occurred. The job has been cancelled."	The job was canceled because a Central Management communication error occurred.	Check the status of the Central Management machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Compressed Data Error."	Compressed data is corrupted.	<ul> <li>Check that the tool used for creating the compressed data is functioning properly.</li> <li>Check that the machine can communicate with the computer properly.</li> </ul>
"Connection with the machine has failed. Check the machine structure."	The machine is malfunctioning, and [Printer] cannot be used.	<ul> <li>Check whether a message is displayed on the control panel.</li> <li>Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.</li> <li>page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"</li> </ul>
"Data storage error."	Printing a document as Test Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, Store Print, or storing the document in Document Server failed. The hard disk is malfunctioning.	If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Document Server is not available to use. Cannot store."	Use of the Document Server function is restricted.	Consult the user administrator.
"Duplex has been cancelled."	The paper source tray is not specified for duplex printing.	Specify to use the paper tray for duplex printing in [Settings] ▶ [Tray Paper Settings] ▶ [Paper Type].
"Error has occurred."	An error such as a syntactic error has occurred.	Check that the PDF file to print does not have an error.
"Exceeded max. capacity of Document Server. Cannot store."	The hard disk is almost full.	<ul> <li>Reduce the size of the document to send.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed.</li> <li>See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> <li>See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. number of files. (Auto)"	The maximum number of Store Print jobs or the maximum number of jobs that can be managed for Hold Print (Auto) documents has been exceeded while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	Erase a Hold Print (Auto) document that is no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of files of Document Server. Cannot store."	The number of documents stored in the machine exceeds the maximum number.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of pages. (Auto)"	An "exceeded max. number of pages" error occurred while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	<ul> <li>Reduce the number of pages to print.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> <li>See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"Exceeded max. number of pages of Document Server. Cannot store."	The number of pages stored in the machine exceeds the maximum number.	<ul> <li>Reduce the number of pages in the document to send.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. pages. Collate is incomplete."	The maximum number of sheets that can be sorted has been exceeded.	Reduce the number of pages to print.
"Exceeded the maximum unit count for Print Volume Use. The job has been cancelled."	When the print volume is limited, printing was canceled because the print volume of a user exceeded the upper limit allotted for the user.	For details about the print volume use limitation, consult the user administrator. The user administrator can clear the counter or change the limit on the print volume. See "Checking Inquiry Information", User Guide (Full Version). See "Specifying Maximum Print Volume Use of Each User", User Guide (Full Version).
"File system is full."	The file system is full, and the PDF file cannot be printed.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version). See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"Hardware Problem: HDD"	An error is occurring on the hard disk of the USB interface.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Hardware Problem: USB"	An error has occurred on the hard disk of the machine.	If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.
"Hardware Problem: Ethernet"	An error has occurred in the Ethernet interface.	
"Hardware Problem: Wireless Card"	An error has occurred in the Wireless LAN board.	Turn off the power of the machine, check that the Wireless LAN board is correctly installed in the machine, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"HDD is full."	The area reserved for forms or fonts in PostScript 3 is full.	Delete a registered form or font that is no longer necessary.
"HDD is full. (Auto)"	An overflow error occurred in the hard disk while storing a document printed by Normal Print as a Hold Print job by the error job storing function.	<ul> <li>Reduce the size of the document to print.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> <li>See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"I/O buffer overflow."	An overflow has occurred in the receive buffer.	<ul> <li>Reduce the transmission data.</li> <li>Increase the value in [I/O Buffer] on the [Settings]</li> <li>▶ [Machine Features Settings]</li> <li>▶ [Printer Settings]</li> <li>▶ [Host Interface] tab.</li> </ul>
"Information for user authentication is already registered for another user."	In LDAP authentication, the same name is registered under different IDs on different servers, and duplicate names (account names) occurred such as when switching the domain (server).	Consult the user administrator. User administrator: Delete the corresponding user from the address book, and register the user again after resolving the duplicate names on different servers.
"Insufficient Memory"	A memory allocation error occurred.	PCL 6 In the printer driver, change "Vector/Raster:" to [Raster] in the [Detailed Settings] tab ▶ [Print Quality:Advanced] menu.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Load following paper in XXX. To force print, select another tray and press [Continue]." (XXX indicates the tray name)	The paper tray specified in the printer driver has no paper loaded.	<ul> <li>To proceed with printing after changing the paper setting, select a tray and press [Continue]. However, when Staple, Cover Sheet, Slip Sheet, Chaptering, or Designate is specified, or when Duplex printing is specified on a paper tray that does not support the function, printing cannot be performed. When Sort is specified, only one copy of the document is printed.</li> <li>To proceed with printing on the specified paper, load the paper in the tray. page 181 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"</li> </ul>
"Memory Overflow"	The insufficient memory error has occurred while printing from the printer driver (PCL 6).	In the printer driver, change "Vector/Raster:" to [Raster] in the [Detailed Settings] tab ▶ [Print Quality:Advanced] menu.
"Memory Retrieval Error"	The data in the memory could not be retrieved.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"No response from the server. Authentication has failed."	In LDAP or Windows authentication, a timeout error occurred while submitting an authentication query to the server.	Consult the administrator of the authentication server.
"Output tray has been changed."	The destination to deliver the output paper was changed because of the paper size limitation of the output destination.	Specify the correct destination to deliver the output paper.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference	
"Paper size and type are mismatched. Select another tray from the following and press [Continue]. To cancel job, press [Job Reset]. Paper size and type can also be changed in User Tools."	The paper tray loaded with paper of the size or type specified in the printer driver is not available.	<ul> <li>To proceed with printing after changing the paper setting, select a tray and press [Continue]. When Staple, Cover Sheet, Slip Sheet, Chaptering, or Designate is specified, or when Duplex printing is specified on a paper tray that does not support the function, printing cannot be performed. When Sort is specified, only one copy of the document is printed.</li> <li>To proceed with printing on the specified paper, load the paper and then check that the paper size and type are correctly specified in [Settings]</li> <li>[Tray Paper Settings].</li> <li>page 181 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"</li> </ul>	
"Parallel I/F board has a problem."	An error has occurred in the parallel interface.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.	
"Printer font error."	There is a problem in the font file of the machine.	Consider repairing the machine.	
"Print overrun."	A page image is discarded while printing the page.	Decrease [Resolution] in the printer driver. See "Applying Different Print Settings Depending on the Document Type", User Guide (Full Version).	
"Receiving data failed."	Transmission of data was canceled.	Send the data again.	
"Sending data failed."	Transmission of data from the printer driver was canceled.	Check that the computer is operating normally.	

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Staple error occurred. The job has been cancelled."	The number of sheets that can be stapled was exceeded, and printing was canceled.	Check the number of sheets that can be stapled on the finisher in use. <b>Staple capacity (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 20 lb. Bond):</b> • 30 sheets: 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 14 D, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 13 <sup>2</sup> / <sub>5</sub> <sup>D</sup> • 50 sheets: A4 <sup>D</sup> , B5 JIS <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 11 <sup>D</sup> , 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> <sup>D</sup> , 16K <sup>D</sup>
"Staple has been cancelled."	The Staple function was canceled because too many printed sheets were specified to be stapled.	Check the specification of the finisher in use, and specify the setting accordingly. <b>Staple capacity (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 20 lb. Bond):</b> • 30 sheets: 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 14 D, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 × 13 <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 13 <sup>2</sup> / <sub>5</sub> D • 50 sheets: A4 <sup>D</sup> , B5 JIS <sup>D</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 11 <sup>D</sup> , 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> D, 16K <sup>D</sup> Staple position that can be specified on different paper orientation and print data orientation. See "Stapling Printed Pages (IM 600SRF Only)", User Guide (Full Version).
	Incorrect finisher is specified in the printer driver.	Check the option configuration specified in the printer driver. See "The Option Configuration of the Machine Is Not Reflected in the Printer Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
	A malfunction occurred temporarily on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"The job was cancelled because the specified settings are not applicable for Booklet."	A condition in which binding cannot be performed was specified, and printing was canceled.	Check the binding condition.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. memory."	The amount of available space on the hard disk became low while saving the capture data.	<ul> <li>Reduce the size of the document to send.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed.</li> <li>See "Deleting Documents Stored in the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> <li>See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. number of files."	The number of documents stored in the machine exceeded the maximum number while saving the capture data.	Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"The print job has been cancelled because capture file(s) could not be stored: Exceeded max. number of pages per file."	The number of pages stored in the machine exceeded the maximum number while saving the capture data.	<ul> <li>Reduce the number of pages in the document to send.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed. See "Erasing Documents from Document Server", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"The selected paper size is not supported. This job has been cancelled."	A paper size that cannot be fed on the machine was specified and printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function that was activated.	Print the document on paper of a size that can be fed on the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"The selected paper type is not supported. This job has been cancelled."	A paper type that cannot be fed on the machine was specified and printing was canceled by the auto job cancel function that was activated.	Print the document on paper of a type that can be fed on the machine.
"You do not have a privilege to use this function. This job has been cancelled."	Authentication information is not registered correctly in the printer driver.	Specify the authentication information in the printer driver. For the authentication information, consult the user administrator. See "Specifying Login Information in the Printer Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
	The user registered in the printer driver does not have permission to use the printer function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Memory storage device not detected. Insert the device."	An SD card or USB flash memory device is not recognized properly.	<ul> <li>Use an SD card with a maximum capacity of 32 GB or a USB flash memory that supports USB 2.0.</li> <li>An SD card or USB flash memory may not be recognized in some situations such as if the media is inserted before the application starts. Insert the SD card or USB flash memory after the application has started.</li> <li>Do not use an SD card or USB flash memory that is not secured or protected by a password.</li> <li>Use media that is formatted for FAT16 or FAT32.</li> <li>Try another SD card or USB flash memory.</li> <li>Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.</li> </ul>

# Messages that Appear with Error Codes

Check the system configuration list or print settings list. The details of the error may also be printed in the list.

See "List / Test Print",	User Guide	(Full Version).
--------------------------	------------	-----------------

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"84: Error"	The amount of available work area is insufficient for processing images.	Reduce the transmission data.
"86: Error"	The parameter in the control code is incorrect.	Specify the correct parameter.
"91: Error" (displayed in the error history)	The auto job cancel function was activated because an unable-to-analyze- command or illegal command error occurred, and printing was canceled.	Check that the data is correct.
"92: Error" (displayed in the error history)	Printing is canceled from the control panel.	To perform printing, operate the control panel again.
"98: Error"	Accessing the hard disk failed.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"99: Error"	When printing a file from an SD card or USB flash memory device, the file to print is in an unsupported format or corrupt.	Check the data to print.
"Command Error"	Communications with the computer is temporarily unstable.	Consult your network administrator.

#### Vote

- The contents of errors may be printed on the Configuration Page. Check the Configuration Page in conjunction with the error log.
- See "List / Test Print", User Guide (Full Version).

# When a Message Appears While Using the Scanner Function

#### Vote

• When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (1) after closing [Settings].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"All the pages are detected as blank. No file was created."	The original was placed with the wrong side facing down when [Delete Blank Page] or [Delete Blank Page] in OCR is specified.	<ul> <li>When scanning on the exposure glass, place the original with the side to scan facing down.</li> <li>When scanning on the ADF, place the original with the side to scan facing up.</li> </ul>
	All pages in the scanned original were determined to be blank when [Delete Blank Page] is specified.	
	All pages in the scanned original were determined to be blank when [Delete Blank Page]	Change [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [Scanner Settings] ► [Send Settings] tab ► [OCR Scanned PDF: Blank Page Sensitivity] to [Level 1]. The machine detects a blank page only when the original is completely white.
	in OCR is specified.	Decrease the value in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [Scanner Settings] ▶ [Scan Settings] tab ▶ [Blank Page Detection Level].

# Messages that Appear on the Control Panel

9

Cause	Solution and reference
The user name/ password are incorrect.	Select the destination in the address book, press [Edit], and check the setting in [Destinations] tab [Email Address].
The user ID/ password specified on the destination folder in Send to Folder are incorrect.	<ul> <li>Select the forwarding destination in the address book, press [Edit], and check the information registered in [Destinations] tab ► [Folder] ► [Folder Authentication Info].</li> <li>Adding "@domain-name" behind the user name may resolve the problem.</li> <li>When a login password is not specified on your computer, specify a login password on the computer and register it to the machine.</li> </ul>
An SD card or USB flash memory device is unavailable for use.	<ul> <li>Check that the external media is formatted in FAT16 or FAT32, and write encryption or protection is not enabled on the media.</li> <li>Check that the external media is not corrupted or damaged.</li> </ul>
The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.
The computer name or folder name specified in the path name is incorrect.	Register the computer name and folder name again.
The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	In the firewall function on the computer, register the machine IP address and the port to use for sending files as exceptions.
	You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network". For details about the ports, see the following: page 298 "List of Specifications"
	The user name/ password are incorrect. The user ID/ password specified on the destination folder in Send to Folder are incorrect. An SD card or USB flash memory device is unavailable for use. The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly. The computer name or folder name specified in the path name is incorrect. The firewall function is enabled on the

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Cannot write on the memory storage device because the device is write- protected."	The memory storage device is write- protected.	Unlock the write-protection on the memory storage device.
"Cannot write on the memory storage device. Check the memory storage device and machine settings."	The memory storage device is faulty, or the file name contains a character that cannot be used.	<ul> <li>Check to see if the memory storage device is defective.</li> <li>Check the memory storage device. It might be unformatted, or its format might be incompatible with this machine.</li> <li>Check the file name set at the time of scanning. For details about the characters that can be used in file names, see "Specifying the File Name" on our website.</li> </ul>
"Exceeded max. page capacity per file. Press [Send] to send the scanned data, or press [Cancel Sending] to delete."	The scan could not be completed because the maximum number of pages that can be scanned by this machine was exceeded during the scanned data was written to the memory storage device.	Reduce the number of documents to be written to the memory storage device, and then try again.
	The number of scanned pages exceeded the maximum page capacity.	Specify whether to send the data that has already been scanned.
"Check original's orientation."	The original is placed in the wrong orientation.	Depending on the combination of the specified settings, the orientation to set the original differs. Be sure to place the original in the correct orientation. See "Placing an Original to Scan", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Connection with PC has failed. Check the settings."	The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly. For details about your network environment, consult the network administrator.
	The computer name or folder name specified in the path name is incorrect.	Register the computer name and folder name again.
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	In the firewall function on the computer, register the machine IP address and the port to use for sending files as exceptions.
		You can check the IP address in [Check Status] ► "Network". For details about the ports, see the following:
		page 298 "List of Specifications"
"Exceeded max. data capacity. Check the resolution and the ratio then press [Start] again."	The data scanned by specifying [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size] exceeds the limit.	<ul> <li>Decrease [Send Settings] ▶ [Resolution].</li> <li>Specify a smaller paper size in [Send Settings]</li> <li>▶ [Scan Ratio] ▶ [Specify Size].</li> </ul>
"Exceeded max. data capacity. Check the scanning resolution, then XXX." (procedure described in place of XXX)	A large size original was scanned at a high resolution, and the resulting data size exceeds the limit.	<ul> <li>Decrease [Send Settings] ▶ [Resolution].</li> <li>Specify a smaller size in [Send Settings] ▶ [Scan Size].</li> </ul>
"Exceeded max. email size. Sending email has been cancelled. Check [Max. Email Size] in Scanner Features."	The file size per page has exceeded the maximum e-mail size specified in [Max. Email Size].	<ul> <li>Specify a lower value in [Send Settings] ▶         [Resolution], or select a smaller paper size in         [Send Settings] ▶ [Scan Ratio] ▶ [Specify         Size].</li> <li>You can change the [Max. Email Size] setting         on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features         Settings] ▶ [Scanner Settings] ▶ [Send         Settings] tab. To divide an e-mail that exceeds         the maximum size, specify [Yes (per Page)] or         [Yes (per Max. Size)] in [Divide &amp; Send Email].</li> </ul>

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded max. number of alphanumeric characters."	The number of entered characters has exceeded the maximum.	Check the maximum number of characters. See "The Setting Values of the Transmission Function", User Guide (Full Version).
"Exceeded max. number of stored files. Cannot send the scanned data as capturing files is unavailable."	Too many files are waiting to be sent.	Try again after they have been sent.
"Exceeded max. page capacity per file. Press [Write] to write the scanned data to the memory storage device, or press [Cancel] to delete."	The scan could not be completed because the maximum number of pages that can be scanned by this machine was exceeded during the scanned data was written to the memory storage device.	Reduce the number of documents to be written to the memory storage device, and then try again.
"Exceeded maximum number of file to store. Delete all unnecessary files."	Too many files are waiting to be sent.	Try again after they have been sent.
"Insufficient memory in the memory storage device."	There is no free space available on the SD card or USB flash memory device, or the file could not be saved due to insufficient space on the media.	Change the external media. When scanning an original in the divide-document or single-page mode, the saved data may not contain all pages in the original. Change the external media and press [Retry] to resume saving the remaining data.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Memory is full. Press [Write] to write the current scanned data to the memory storage device, or press [Cancel] to delete."	The scan could not be completed because there was insufficient hard disk memory when the scanned data was saved to the memory storage device.	Specify whether or not to save the scanned document to the memory storage device.
"Not all of the image will be scanned. Check the ratio and	The scaling factor specified in [Scan Ratio] is too large.	Specify a smaller value in [Send Settings] ▶ [Scan Ratio].
then press [Start] again."	The paper size specified in [Scan Ratio] ▶ [Specify Size] requires a reduction value smaller than 25%.	Specify a paper size for which a reduction ratio greater than 25% is specified in [Send Settings] ► [Scan Ratio] ► [Specify Size].
"Programmed. Cannot program the destination(s) that is not programmed in the address book."	A folder specified by Manual Entry is included among the programmed destinations.	Register the destination in the address book of the machine, and then register it to a program.
"Programmed. Cannot program the folder destination(s) with protection code(s)."	A destination specified with a protection code is included among the programmed destinations.	<ul> <li>You cannot program a destination specified with a protection code. Specify this destination individually.</li> <li>To program this destination, cancel the protection code and then register the destination to a program.</li> <li>See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"SMTP authentication email address and administrator email address mismatch."	The SMTP authentication e-mail address is not registered in the administrator e-mail address.	Register the SMTP authentication e-mail address in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [File Transfer] tab ▶ [Administrator's Email Address].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Some invalid destination(s) contained. Do you want to select only valid destination(s)?"	The specified group contains either an e- mail destination and/or folder destination that is not supported by the specified transmission method.	When sending data to a destination other than an e- mail address, press [Select].
"Some of selected files are currently in use. They could not be deleted."	You cannot delete a file which is waiting to be transmitted ("Waiting" status displayed).	Cancel transmission ("Waiting" status cleared), and then delete the file.
"The program is recalled. Cannot recall the folder destination(s) with protection code(s)."	A folder destination specified with a protection code is included among the programmed destinations.	<ul> <li>You cannot recall a destination specified with a protection code in a program. Specify this destination individually.</li> <li>To program this destination, cancel the protection code and then register the destination to a program. See "Using the Protection Function to Prevent the Misuse of Addresses", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"The size of the scanned data is too small. Check the resolution and the ratio and then press [Start] again."	The data scanned by specifying [Reduce/ Enlarge] ▶ [Specify Size] is too small.	<ul> <li>Increase [Send Settings] ▶ [Resolution].</li> <li>Specify a larger paper size in [Send Settings]</li> <li>▶ [Scan Ratio] ▶ [Specify Size].</li> </ul>
"Transmission has failed. Insufficient memory in the destination hard disk. To check the current status, press [Scan Files Status]."	The amount of available hard disk space on the destination computer, SMTP server, or FTP server is insufficient.	Check that the amount of free space is sufficient.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Transmission has failed." "To check the current status, press [Scan Files Status]."	A network error occurred while transferring the data due to a busy network or another reason.	If the same message is displayed after scanning the original again, consult the administrator.
"Memory storage device not detected. Insert the device."	An SD card or USB flash memory device is not recognized properly.	<ul> <li>Use an SD card with a maximum capacity of 32 GB or a USB flash memory that supports USB 2.0.</li> <li>An SD card or USB flash memory may not be recognized in some situations such as if the media is inserted before the application starts. Insert the SD card or USB flash memory after the application has started.</li> <li>Do not use an SD card or USB flash memory that is not secured or protected by a password.</li> <li>Use media that is formatted for FAT16 or FAT32.</li> <li>Try another SD card or USB flash memory.</li> <li>Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.</li> </ul>

# Messages that Appear on the Computer

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Any of Login User Name, Login Password or Driver Encryption Key is incorrect."	The login user name or password entered in [General User Authentication] is incorrect.	Enter the correct login user name and password in [General User Authentication] that is displayed after clicking [Scan]. For the login user name and password, consult the user administrator.
	The driver encryption key is not registered correctly in the TWAIN driver.	Register the driver encryption key on the [Details] ▶ [Authenticate] tab in the TWAIN driver. For the driver encryption key, consult the network administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication password and/or authentication algorithm may be incorrect. Please check."	The SNMPv3 authentication information registered in Network Connection Tool does not match the information of the machine.	Consult the network administrator for the SNMPv3 authentication information, and change the information registered in Network Connection Tool. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
"Authentication succeeded. However, the access privileges for	The logged-in user does not have access privileges to use the	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book.
scanner function has been denied."	scanner function.	See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Cannot add any more scanning mode."	The maximum number of scanning modes that can be registered exceeds the maximum number (100).	Delete scanning modes that are no longer necessary.
"Cannot connect to the scanner. Check the network Access Mask settings in User Tools."	An access mask is specified.	Consult your administrator.
"Cannot specify any more scanning area."	The maximum number of scanning areas that can be registered exceeds the maximum number (100).	Delete scanning areas that are no longer necessary.
"Communication error has occurred on the network."	A communication error has occurred on the network.	Check that the settings for the communication protocol (TCP/IP) are configured correctly on the computer.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Entered User Code is not registered or you do not have access privileges to use the scanner function, please contact your administrator."	The correct user code is not registered in the TWAIN drive when User Code authentication is specified on the machine.	Register the User Code on the [Details] [Authenticate] tab in the TWAIN driver. For the User Code, consult the user administrator.
	The User Code registered in the TWAIN driver is not assigned with the privileges to use the scanner function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Confirming the Available Functions", User Guide (Full Version).
"Error has occurred in the scanner."	The scan condition specified in the application exceeds the range that can be specified on the machine.	Specify the scan condition within the range that can be specified on the machine. page 298 "List of Specifications"
	A malfunction is occurring in the driver.	<ul> <li>Restart the application, and perform scanning again.</li> <li>Install the TWAIN driver again.</li> </ul>
	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"
"Error has occurred in the scanner driver."	An error is occurring in the driver or operating system.	Restart the computer.
	There is a problem with the network environment.	Check that the computer is connected to the network correctly and in an environment where the TCP/IP protocol can be used.
"Fatal error has occurred in the scanner."	An unrecoverable error is occurring on the machine.	Consider repairing the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Insufficient memory. Close all other applications, then restart scanning."	Other applications are running on the computer, and the amount of free memory is insufficient.	<ul> <li>Close applications on the computer.</li> <li>If the same message is displayed when no other applications are running after starting the computer, uninstall the TWAIN driver, restart the computer, and then install the TWAIN driver again.</li> </ul>
"Insufficient memory. Reduce the scanning area."	The memory allocated for the scanner function is insufficient.	<ul> <li>Reduce the scan size or resolution. You may be able to resolve the error also by reducing the brightness value when Duotone (black and white) or a high resolution is specified.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Specify [No Compression] on the [Initial Settings] ▶ [Compression] tab in the TWAIN driver.</li> </ul>
"Invalid Winsock version. Please use version 1.1 or higher."	Winsock is corrupted.	Restore Winsock on the computer.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Scanner is not available. Check the scanner connection status."	The power of the machine is not turned on, or the machine is not connected to the network correctly.	<ul> <li>Check that the machine is turned on, and connected to the network correctly.</li> <li>Use an application such as telnet to make sure SNMPv1 or SNMPv2 is set as the machine's protocol. For details about how to check this, see the Operating Instructions for Device Monitoring on our website.</li> </ul>
	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Configure the firewall function of the computer to allow communication of the application used, or disable the firewall function.
	The IP address of the machine could not be resolved from the host name.	Check that the host name of the machine is configured in Network Connection Tool that is installed with the TWAIN driver. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
	The IPv6 address could not be obtained when only IPv6 is enabled on the machine.	<ul> <li>Check whether the machine's host name is specified in the Network Connection Tool. For the WIA driver, check the [Network Connection] tab in the properties.</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Log in to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode, and select [Active] in [IPv4] ▶ "LLMNR" under [Device Management] ▶ [Configuration] ▶ "Network".</li> </ul>
		<ul> <li>Use Web Image Monitor to set "LLMNR" of "IPv6" to [Active].</li> </ul>
"Scanner is not available on the specified device."	The TWAIN scanner function is disabled on the machine.	The TWAIN scanner function cannot be used.
"Scanner is not ready. Check the scanner and the options."	The exposure glass cover or ADF is open.	Close the exposure glass cover or ADF.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Scanning has been aborted because memory in Mainframe became full."	The amount of available space on the hard disk of the machine is insufficient when scanning is performed with the [Read-ahead] check box selected in the TWAIN driver.	<ul> <li>Clear the [Read-ahead] check box in the TWAIN driver.</li> <li>Erase documents that are no longer needed from the machine.</li> </ul>
"The device's authentication service cannot be performed."	Authentication cannot be performed because the authentication service is starting up or busy.	<ul> <li>When User Code or Basic authentication is specified, wait a while until processing the machine address is completed.</li> <li>When Windows or LDAP authentication is specified, wait a while until the server becomes ready for processing. If authentication is not possible even after waiting for a while, consult your administrator.</li> </ul>
"There is no response	The network is busy.	Wait a while.
from the scanner. There may be a number of reasons for this, e.g. the data between the	The firewall function is enabled on the computer.	Configure the firewall function of the computer to allow communication of the application used, or disable the firewall function.
computer and scanner has been lost because of an increase in network traffic, the firewall in the virus protection software may be activated, or there might be problems with the hardware etc. If you can not fix this problem, please call service."	The machine or the computer is not connected to the network correctly.	Check that the machine or the computer is connected to the network correctly.

#### 9. Troubleshooting

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"User Authentication in SNMPv3 connection has failed."	The authentication information is registered incorrectly in Network Connection Tool when SNMPv3 encrypted communication is enabled on the machine.	Register the SNMPv3 authentication information in Network Connection Tool that is installed on the computer with the TWAIN driver. For the SNMPv3 authentication information, consult your network administrator. See "Installing the TWAIN Driver", User Guide (Full Version).

# When Other Messages Appear

### Vote

• When confirming or changing the settings in [Settings], press [Home] (🕋) after closing [Settings].

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Administrator Authentication for User Management must be set to on before this selection can be made."	The User Management privilege is disabled in the administrator authentication management.	<ul> <li>When specifying Basic, Windows, or LDAP authentication, configure the User Management privilege in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Administrator Authentication Management].</li> <li>See "Registering Administrators Before Using the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).</li> </ul>
"Destination list / machine settings are updated. Selected destinations or function settings have been cleared. Please re- select the settings."	A destination is being registered and devices are being configured using Web Image Monitor.	Wait until the message disappears and do not turn off the power of the machine. You may not be able to perform operations for a while depending on the number of destinations being registered.
"Cannot connect with the wireless card. Turn the main power switch off, then check the card." (A "wireless LAN board" is referred to as a "wireless card".)	<ul> <li>The wireless LAN board was not inserted when the machine was turned on.</li> <li>The wireless LAN board was pulled out after the machine was turned on.</li> </ul>	Turn off the power, and then check the wireless LAN board is inserted correctly. After this, turn on the power again. If the message appears again, consult your service representative.
	The settings are not updated although the unit is detected.	

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Clean the scanning glass. (Located next to the exposure glass.)"	The scanning glass or guide plate of the ADF is dirty.	Clean the scanning glass or guide plate. See "Cleaning the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
"Firmware update will start. Press [OK]. It will start automatically after 30 seconds."	A firmware update is available, and the machine is about to perform an update.	It is recommended to apply the update, but you can stop the updating process by pressing [Stop] within 30 seconds after the message is displayed. Do not turn off the power of the machine while the updating process is in progress.
"Internal cooling fan is active."	The fan installed in the vent for cooling the interior of the machine became active after a large number of pages has been printed.	You may hear a rotating noise while the fan is active, but you can continue using the machine as usual.
"Output Tray is full. Remove paper."	The output tray is full.	Remove the paper from the output tray.
"Problems with the wireless board. Please call service."	The Wireless LAN board can be accessed, but an error has been detected.	Turn off the power of the machine, check that the Wireless LAN board is correctly installed in the machine, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power" If the message persists even after you have turned the power off and then on, consider repairing the machine.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Updating the destination list Please wait. Specified destination(s) or sender's name has been cleared."	A destination is being registered using Web Image Monitor.	Wait until the message disappears and do not turn off the power of the machine. You may not be able to perform operations for a while depending on the number of destinations being registered.
	A specified destination or sender's name was cleared when the destination list in the delivery server was updated.	Specify the destination or sender's name again.
"Updating the destination list has failed. Try again?"	A network error occurred.	Check the connection between the machine and the computer.
	Anti-virus software or a firewall function is running on the computer.	Add the destination list program to the exception list in the anti-virus software on the computer, or register the machine IP address to the exception list in the firewall function. You can check the IP address in [Check Status] Thetwork".
"You do not have the privileges to use this function."	The logged-in user does not have the privileges to use the specified function.	Consult the user administrator. The user administrator can change the access permissions in the address book. See "Preventing Information Leaks", User Guide (Full Version).
	Changing the setting is not allowed under the administrative privileges granted to the logged-in user.	Check the administrative privilege required for changing the specified setting. See "Registering Administrators Before Using the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).
"The selected file(s) contained file(s) without access privileges. Only file(s) with access privileges will be deleted."	You have tried to delete files without the permission to do so.	Check your access permission for stored documents, or delete a document you do not have permission to delete. See "Registering Administrators Before Using the Machine", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Self checking"	The machine is performing image adjustment operations.	The machine may perform periodic maintenance during operations. The frequency and duration of maintenance depends on the humidity, temperature, and printing factors such as number of prints, paper size, and paper type. Wait for the machine to resume operation.
"Incompatible USB device has been connected. Check the USB device."	The machine accidentally detected a USB cable as unusable because dust accumulated in the USB port.	<ul> <li>Clean the USB ports on the back side and the back left side of the machine after turning off the power of the machine.</li> <li>page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"</li> <li>If the problem persists, consult your service representative.</li> </ul>

# Messages that Appear When Machine Login Fails

Check the error code displayed with the "Authentication has failed." message, and taken the necessary action.

#### Vote

- The letter at the beginning of the error code indicates the type of authentication specified on the machine.
  - B: Basic authentication
  - W: Windows authentication
  - L: LDAP authentication

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0103-000	An operation in the TWAIN supporting application was performed from the computer while a user was logged in to the machine or performing the login procedure.	Check whether another user is logged in to the machine, and then perform the operation.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed."	An incorrect password was entered.	Enter the correct password.
B/W/L0104-000	The Driver Encryption Key is not registered correctly in the TWAIN	Consult the network administrator whether the Driver Encryption Key is required, and configure the driver accordingly.
	driver.	See "Specifying Login Information in the Printer Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
		See "Specifying Login Information in the LAN- Fax Driver", User Guide (Full Version).
		The network administrator can check the setting of "Driver Encryption Key" in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Extended Security].
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0206-002	An incorrect login user name or password was entered.	Enter the correct login user name and password.
	A user has attempted to log in to the functions that can be accessed only by the administrator such as [Settings] when [Application Authentication Management] is specified.	The user needs to log in from the application login screen.
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0206-003	":" or another character that cannot be used in a login user name was entered.	<ul> <li>Enter the correct login user name.</li> <li>Change the user name if it contains a space, ":" or other unusable characters.</li> </ul>
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0207-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." B/W/L0208-000 B/W/L0208-002	The account is locked because the number of failed login attempts has exceeded the limit.	Request the user administrator to unlock the account.
"Authentication has failed." L0307-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Try again later.
"Authentication has failed." W0400-102	Kerberos authentication has failed because the server was not responsive.	Check whether the server is operating normally.
"Authentication has failed." W0400-200	Available resources are insufficient due to too many authentication requests.	Try again later.
"Authentication has failed." W0400-202	sAMAccountName was used as the login user name when a user in the child domain logged in under a parent-child domain environment, and Idap_bind failed.	Use UserPrincipalName as the login user name.
	The SSL settings specified on the authentication server and the device do not match.	Check whether the SSL settings specified on the authentication server and the device match.
"Authentication has failed." L0400-210	The login name attribute is not specified, or an attribute on which the information cannot be obtained is specified.	Check whether [Login Name Attribute] is specified correctly. See "Verifying Users to Operate the Machine (User Authentication)", User Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." W/L0406-003	":" or other characters that cannot be used in a login user name was entered.	<ul> <li>Enter the correct login user name.</li> <li>Change the user name if it contains a space, ":" or other unusable characters.</li> </ul>
"Authentication has failed." W0406-101	Too many requests for authentication occurred at one time.	Try again later. If the problem persists, check whether the machine is under an authentication attack. The attack status can be checked by the screen message, in the system log, or in the e- mail notification sent to the administrator.
"Authentication has failed." W0406-107	A user group cannot be obtained.	Check whether the group name registered on the machine is correct and whether the DC settings are configured correctly. <sup>*1</sup>
	Kerberos Authentication has failed.	Check whether the realm name registered on the clock at the KDC (key distribution center) and the clock of the device are synchronized. <sup>*3</sup>
	No connection is established to the authentication server.	Enter the server IP address in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Interface Settings] tab ► [Ping Command] to check whether a connection can be established to the server.
	The domain name is incorrect or cannot be resolved.	Check whether the domain name registered on the machine is correct and whether the name can be resolved. <sup>*2</sup>
	The login user name or password is incorrect.	Check the login user name and/or password of the user registered on the server.
"Authentication has failed." L0406-200	Too many requests for authentication occurred at one time.	Try again later. If the problem persists, check whether the machine is under an authentication attack. The attack status can be checked by the screen message, in the system log, or in the e- mail notification sent to the administrator.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." L0406-201	[Off] is specified in the authentication settings of the LDAP server.	Set "Authentication" to a setting other than [Off] in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
"Authentication has failed." L0406-202 L0406-203	The LDAP authentication settings or LDAP server settings are incorrect.	Check whether the LDAP authentication settings or LDAP server settings are correctly configured. <sup>*4</sup> Check whether the SSL settings are supported on the LDAP server.
	The login user name or password is incorrect.	Enter the correct login user name and password. Change the login user name if it exceeds 128 bytes in length or contains a space, ":" or other unusable character.
	The simplified authentication mode is incorrectly used.	Check whether the server name, login user name, password, and information entered into the search filter are correct. Note that authentication cannot be performed if obtaining DN of the login user name under the representative account fails in the simple authentication mode.
"Authentication has failed." L0406-204	Kerberos Authentication has failed.	Check whether the realm name registered on the clock at the KDC (key distribution center) and the clock of the device are synchronized. <sup>*3</sup>
"Authentication has failed." W/L0409-000	There was no response returned from the authentication server, and an authentication timeout error occurred.	Check the status of the network and the server to use for authentication.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0511-000 W0517-000	The user registered on the machine has the same name as another user distinguished by the unique attribute of the authentication server.	<ul> <li>Delete the older user that is redundant, or change the login name.</li> <li>If the message is displayed after switching the authentication server, delete the user on the old server.</li> </ul>

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." W/L0606-004	A user name that cannot be specified in the login user name was specified.	Do not use "other", "admin", "supervisor", or "HIDE*" in user account names.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0607-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0612-005	The number of users registered in the address book has reached the upper limit, and auto- registration failed.	Ask the user administrator to delete users that are no longer needed from the address book.
"Authentication has failed." W/L0707-001	Web Image Monitor or another method was used to edit or create a backup of the address book.	Wait a while.

\*1 When obtaining user groups, check the following:

- The user account that can obtain user groups is sAMAccountName (user). Do not use UserPrincipalName (user@domain.xxx.co.jp) as the user name.
- Check whether the name in "Group" is correctly specified including the case-sensitivity in [Settings]
   ▶ [Machine Features Settings]
   ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab
   ▶ [User Authentication Management]
   ▶ [Windows Auth.].
- Select the user in the address book, press [Edit], and then check that [User Management / Others] tab ▶ [User Management] ▶ [Available Functions / Applications] check box is cleared.
- Check whether "Global Scope" is specified as the scope of the group in a property for the user group created in DC, and the group type specified in "Security". Also check whether an account is registered to the user group that has been created. If more than one DC exists, check whether a trust relationship between DCs is established.

\*2 To resolve the domain name, see the following:

Check whether [Domain Name] and [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] is specified correctly in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Interface Settings] tab.

- Enter the IP address in [Domain Name] to check the connection. If authentication can be performed using the IP address, check [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] again.
- If authentication by IP address is not possible, check whether LM/NTLM is set to be denied in the domain controller security policy or domain security policy. Also check that the port is not closed in the firewall between the device and the domain controller or in the firewall settings of the domain controller. When the Windows firewall is enabled, create a new rule that allows communication on port 137 and port 139 in "Advanced" of the Windows firewall. Open the TCP/IP properties from the network connection properties, select the "Enable NetBIOS Over TCP/IP" check box on the [Advanced] ▶ [WINS] tab, and open port 137.

\*3 For Kerberos authentication, check the following:

- Check that "Realm Name", "KDC Server Name", "Domain Name" are specified correctly in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Program / Change / Delete Realm]. Enter "Realm Name" in upper case.
- Configure the setting so that the difference in time between the clocks on KDC and device is less than five minutes. The clock on the machine can be adjusted in [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Timer Settings] tab ► [Set Time].
- Kerberos authentication fails if auto-obtaining of KDC in Windows authentication fails. When autoobtaining cannot be activated, switch to manual.

\*4 For LDAP settings, check the following:

- Check whether the LDAP server is correctly specified in [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings]
   ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [User Authentication Management] ▶ [LDAP Auth.] and Login Name Attribute is registered correctly.
- Check that the representative account is registered in "Authentication" ▶ "Kerberos Authentication" under [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab
   ▶ [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server], and then execute [Connection Test].

See "Programming the LDAP Server", User Guide (Full Version).

If the connection test fails, check whether [Domain Name] and [DNS Configuration] or [WINS Configuration] is specified correctly on the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Interface Settings] tab.

#### Messages that Appear When Logging in to the Machine Using an IC Card Fails

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." *0150-401	The card is locked because the number of times an incorrect PIN code was entered exceeds the limit.	Unlock the card.

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Authentication has failed." *0151-401	An incorrect PIN code was entered.	Enter the correct PIN.
"Authentication has failed." *0153-402	The card authentication device has been removed or is not connected properly.	Connect the card authentication device again. Connect the card authentication device to the USB2.0 Interface Type A on the back left side of the machine.
"Authentication has failed." *0154-402	Reading of an IC card has failed.	Set the IC card on the authentication device correctly and for a longer duration.
"Authentication has failed." *0156-401	An incorrect user name or password was entered.	Enter the correct user name and password.
"The card authentication device is not connected."	The card authentication device has been removed or is not connected properly.	Connect the card authentication device again. Connect the card authentication device to the USB2.0 Interface Type A on the back left side of the machine.
	A malfunction is temporarily occurring on the machine.	Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. page 9 "Turning On and Off the Power"

# Messages that Appear When the LDAP Server Is Unavailable

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Connection with LDAP	The network is busy.	Try again.
server has failed. Check the server status."	The setting information is incorrect.	Check the setting information of the [Settings] ► [Machine Features Settings] ► [System Settings] ► [Administrator Tools] tab ► [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server]. See "Programming the LDAP Server", User
		Guide (Full Version).

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Exceeded time limit for LDAP server search. Check the server status."	The network is busy.	Try again.
	The setting information is incorrect.	Check the setting information of the [Settings] ▶ [Machine Features Settings] ▶ [System Settings] ▶ [Administrator Tools] tab ▶ [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
		See "Programming the LDAP Server", User Guide (Full Version).
"LDAP server authentication has failed. Check the settings."	The user name or password is incorrect.	Select the user in the address book, press [Edit], and specify the correct user name and password in [User Management / Others] tab ▶ [User Management] ▶ [LDAP Authentication Info].
		See "Registering a User in the Address Book and Specifying the Login Information", User Guide (Full Version).

# Messages that Appear When There Is a Problem with the Certificate

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"XXX because the device certificate used for the S/ MIME signature is not currently valid." (procedure described in place of XXX)	The device certificate used for the S/MIME signature is not currently valid.	Install a new device certificate used for the S/ MIME signature. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"XXX because there is a problem with the Digital Signature's device certificate. Check the device certificate." (procedure described in place of XXX)		

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"XXX because the Digital Signature's device certificate is not currently valid." (procedure described in place of XXX)	The device certificate used for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A is not currently valid.	Use a valid device certificate for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A. See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
"XXX because there is a problem with the device certificate used for the S/ MIME signature. Check the device certificate." (procedure described in place of XXX)	The device certificate used for the digital signature in PDF or PDF/A is missing or invalid.	
"The destination cannot be selected because its encryption certificate is not currently valid."	The user certificate (destination certificate) has expired.	Install a new user certificate. See "Encrypting Network Communication", User Guide (Full Version).
"The group destination cannot be selected because it contains a destination with an encryption certificate that is not currently valid."	-	
"Transmission cannot be performed because the encryption certificate is not currently valid."		

# Messages that Appear When an Application Site Cannot Be Used

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"A server error has occurred."	An unexpected error has occurred on the server.	<ul><li>See the server maintenance information in [Information].</li><li>Check whether the network settings</li></ul>
"Cannot connect to server which installs applications. Check maintenance information on Information screen or network settings."	Cannot connect to the installation server.	([DNS Configuration], [Proxy Settings]) are correctly configured. See "Installing an Application from Application Site", User Guide (Full Version).
"Could not update the firmware."		
"Failed to download the application"		
"Failed to install the application because an error has occurred."		
"Could not restore the firmware because the required data does not exist."	The firmware from Application Site has not been updated.	The firmware cannot be recovered.
"JavaTM Platform has not been started. Install the application after JavaTM Platform has been started from Web Image Monitor."	JavaVM is not running.	Log in to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode, and start "JavaTM Platform" in [Device Management] ► [Configuration] ► [Extended Feature Settings] ► [Startup Setting] ► [Start Up/Stop].
"The specified page cannot be found."	An error has occurred in Application Site.	See the server maintenance information in [Information].
"There is insufficient space to store internally, delete any unnecessary applications."	The remaining free space on the hard disk is insufficient.	Delete applications that are not necessary.

# When Paper or an Original Is Jammed

Remove the jammed sheet by following the procedure described in the animated illustration displayed on the control panel. If paper jams occur frequently, check the condition of the paper and the settings in [Tray Paper Settings].

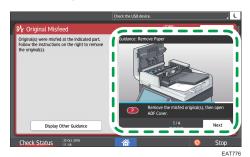
Be careful not to rip the jammed paper and leave small pieces inside the machine when removing. Hold on the left and right edges of the paper firmly and apply force evenly to pull out the paper.

# 

- There are highly-heated parts inside the machine. When removing misfed paper, do not touch areas other than those specified in this manual. Touching those areas can result in burns.
- When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, make sure not to trap or injure your fingers.
- When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, close the front cover and do these tasks one tray at a time.
- Close all the paper trays before opening the front cover to remove jammed paper or replace supplies.

#### Comportant 🔁

- Do not turn off the power of the machine when removing the jammed paper. If you turn off the power, the specified settings values are reset.
- Only perform the operation described in the animated illustration. Failure to do so may degrade the print quality or cause a malfunction.
- 1. Follow the procedure described in the animated illustration to remove the jammed paper.



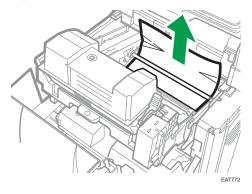
2. Close all covers that have been opened.



- If the jammed paper was torn apart while removing it, check that all pieces are accounted for.
- If paper becomes trapped between the tray and the machine while removing jammed paper, pull out the tray completely and then remove the paper.

9

- If the message remains displayed even after you remove the jammed paper, open the front cover completely and then close it. Check whether any paper is jammed in another location on the screen shown in Step 1 if the message persists.
- Multiple paper misfeed locations may be indicated at the same time. When this happens, check all the areas indicated.
- If there is no misfed paper in the area you check first, see the other areas that are indicated.
- If paper misfeed message (B) appears, carefully remove jammed paper from behind the registration roller.



- If a paper misfeed occurs, remove paper left in the machine or caught among parts of the machine.
- If you notice a paper jam about to occur in the ADF, press [Stop] to pause scanning, and place the original in the ADF again.

#### If Paper Jams Occur Frequently

Check that the paper is loaded properly and the settings in [Tray Paper Settings] are specified correctly.

#### **Paper condition**

Items to check	Solution if applicable
Are the sheets of paper in close contact with each other?	Fan the sheets thoroughly before loading them in the tray.

Items to check	Solution if applicable
Are the sheets of paper curled?	<ul> <li>Correct the curl before loading the paper in the tray. When the paper supports duplex printing, fan the paper thoroughly and turn over the paper.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>To prevent paper becoming curled, store the paper horizontally on a flat surface.</li> </ul>
Is the paper flat and not	<ul> <li>Load new paper with no folds or wrinkles.</li> </ul>
folded or wrinkled?	<ul> <li>Do not use paper that has been used for copying or printing on a copy, printer, or MFP other than the machine.</li> </ul>
Is the paper dry and not	<ul> <li>Load paper that has been stored in a dry environment.</li> </ul>
moist?	<ul> <li>Store paper in an environment where the humidity is below 70 %. Once the packaging material containing the paper has been opened, place the paper in a plastic bag to keep it dry.</li> </ul>
Is the cut surface of the paper smooth and clean?	If the cut surface is uneven, set the paper in a different orientation so that the cut surface faces another direction. When the paper supports duplex printing, turn over the paper.
Is the paper too thick? Is the paper too thin?	Check the specifications for the paper that can be used on the machine, and load paper that is supported. page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"

### Condition of the loaded paper

Items to check	Solution if applicable
Are too many sheets of paper loaded?	Load paper below the upper limit mark ( — or — ) in the tray.

ltems to check	Solution if applicable
Are the side fence and end fence in the paper source tray of the mainframe properly adjusted to the paper size?	<ul> <li>Adjust the side fence or end fence so that there is no gap between the fence and loaded paper.</li> <li>When loading only a small amount of paper in the tray, adjust the fences so that they do not press too tight against the paper.</li> <li>With the fence so that they do not press too tight against the paper.</li> </ul>
	pushed with force, the side fence may move slightly.
Is the bypass tray used correctly?	<ul> <li>Set the machine in a location where the bypass tray and the loaded paper do not come in contact with the wall.</li> <li>Adjust the paper guides on the left and right sides of the tray to match the paper size.</li> <li>When loading paper that is larger than A4<sup>D</sup> or 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11<sup>D</sup>, pull out the extender.</li> </ul>

• Also check the basic procedure for loading paper into the machine again. page 181 "Loading Paper into the Paper Tray"

### Tray Paper Settings

Items to check	Solution if applicable
Do the paper size and the setting in [Settings] ▶ [Tray Paper Settings] match?	<ul> <li>Specify a setting that matches the loaded paper in "Paper Size". Press [Home] (</li></ul>

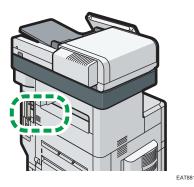
9. Troubleshooting

# 10. Specifications for the Machine

# **Model-Specific Information**

This section explains how you can identify the region your machine belongs to.

There is a label on the rear of the machine, located in the position shown below. The label contains details that identify the region your machine belongs to. Read the label.



The following information is region-specific. Read the information under the symbol that corresponds to the region of your machine.

Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a region A model:

- CODE XXXX -27, -29
- 220-240 V

Region B (mainly North America)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a region B model:

- CODE XXXX -17
- 120-127 V

Note

- Dimensions in this manual are given in two units of measure: metric and inch. If your machine is a Region A model, refer to the metric units. If your machine is a Region B model, refer to the inch units.
- If your machine is a region A model and "CODE XXXX -27" is printed on the label, see
   "

   Region A (mainly Europe)" also.

10

# List of Specifications

#### **Vote**

- We have licenses from the authors to use their software including open sources. Refer to the files in the Licenses folder included in the supplied CD-ROM for statements requested from the authors.
- Some open-source software and licensed software in the CD-ROM are not used, depending on the machine's options and software versions.

### **Specifications for the Main Unit**

ltem	Specifications
Configuration	Desktop
Memory	2 GB
Hard disk size	320 GB
Copy process	Laser beam scanning and electro-photographic printing
Exposure glass	Stationary original exposure type
Scan method	Flatbed scanning
Warm-up time (23°C (73.4°F), rated voltage)	<ul><li>Normal mode: 60 seconds</li><li>Quick mode: 25 seconds</li></ul>
First copy time	6.7 seconds (A4D, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 11D, Tray 1, exposure glass)
First print time	<ul> <li>IM 550F: 3.8 seconds</li> <li>IM 600F/IM 600SRF: 3.7 seconds</li> <li>(A4D, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, Tray 1)</li> </ul>
Copy/print speed (per minute)	<ul> <li>IM 550F</li> <li>A4D, 55 sheets/minute</li> <li>8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, 57 sheets/minute</li> <li>IM 600F/IM 600SRF</li> <li>A4D, 60 sheets/minute</li> <li>8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 14D, 62 sheets/minute</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Maximum original size	Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) A4 <sup>C</sup> Region B (mainly North America) 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14 <sup>C</sup>
Original scanning area	<ul> <li>Exposure Glass</li> <li>Image: Constant of the second state of the second sta</li></ul>
Originals	Sheet, book, three-dimensional object
Copy size	<ul> <li>Tray 1, Bypass Tray: page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"</li> <li>Duplex: A4D, A5D, B5 JISD, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 14D, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 13D, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> × 14D, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> × 13D, 8 × 13D, 8 × 10D, 7<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> × 10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>D, 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>D, 16KD, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 13<sup>2</sup>/<sub>5</sub>D</li> <li>Duplex (Custom Size): Vertical: 210.0-356.0 mm (8.27-14.01 inches) Horizontal: 139.7-216.0 mm (5.50-8.50 inches)</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Paper weight	<ul> <li>Tray 1, Bypass tray: page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"</li> <li>Duplex: 64–120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (17 lb. Bond–44 lb. Cover) *1</li> </ul>
Missing image area (Copy)	Print area Print area 4 4 2 4 3 2 4 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 2 3 3 2 3 3 2 3 3 2 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3
Preset reproduction ratio	<ul> <li>Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)</li> <li>Preset reproduction ratios (%): <ul> <li>Enlargement: 200, 141</li> <li>Full size: 100</li> <li>Reduction: 93, 71, 50</li> </ul> </li> <li>Region B (mainly North America)</li> <li>Preset reproduction ratios (%): <ul> <li>Enlargement: 155, 129</li> <li>Full size: 100</li> <li>Reduction: 93, 78, 65</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Reproduction ratio (zoom)	From 25–400% in increments of 1%

ltem	Specifications
Resolution (scanning originals)	600 × 600 dpi
Resolution (copying)	600 × 600 dpi
Tone	256 tones
Paper capacity (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 20 lb. Bond)	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Continuous copy run	1–999 sheets
Duplex	Standard
Power requirements	<ul> <li>Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)</li> <li>220–240 V, 6 A, 50/60 Hz</li> <li>Region B (mainly North America)</li> <li>120–127 V, 11.5 A, 60 Hz</li> </ul>
Power consumption (Main unit only) Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)	<ul> <li>IM 550F</li> <li>Ready: 88.2 W</li> <li>During printing: 710 W</li> <li>Maximum: 1500 W</li> <li>IM 600F</li> <li>Ready: 88.0 W</li> <li>During printing: 758 W</li> <li>Maximum: 1500 W</li> <li>IM 600SRF</li> <li>Ready: 93.8 W</li> <li>During printing: 749 W</li> <li>Maximum: 1500 W</li> </ul>
Power consumption (Complete system) <sup>Region</sup> (mainly Europe and Asia)	Maximum: 1500 W or less • The complete system consists of the main unit, four 500-sheet paper feed units, wireless LAN board, and an expansion memory.

ltem	Specifications
Power consumption (Main unit only) Region B (mainly North America)	<ul> <li>IM 550F Ready: 87.4 W During printing: 760 W Maximum: 1500 W</li> <li>IM 600F Ready: 86.7 W During printing: 789 W Maximum: 1500 W</li> <li>IM 600SRF Ready: 94.1 W During printing: 805 W Maximum: 1500 W</li> <li>The power level when the main switch is turned off and the power cord is plugged into an outlet: 1 W or less</li> </ul>
Power consumption (Complete system) <sup>(()</sup> Region B (mainly North America)	<ul> <li>Maximum: 1500 W or less</li> <li>The complete system consists of the main unit, four 500-sheet paper feed units, wireless LAN board, and an expansion memory.</li> </ul>
Dimensions	<ul> <li>IM 550F/IM 600F (W × D × H up to ADF): 480 × 539 × 644 mm (18.9 × 21.2 × 25.4 inches)</li> <li>IM 600SRF (W × D × H up to ADF): 480 × 543 × 740 mm (18.9 × 21.4 × 29.2 inches)</li> </ul>
Space for main unit (W × D)	<ul> <li>IM 550F/IM 600F 980 × 1,339 mm (38.6 × 52.7 inches) (including the bypass tray and output trays)</li> <li>IM 600SRF 1,080 × 1,343 mm (42.5 × 52.9 inches) (including the bypass tray and output trays)</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Noise emission (Sound power level: Main unit only)	<ul> <li>IM 550F Stand-by: 30.8 dB (A) Copying: 68.8 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600F Stand-by: 30.3 dB (A) Copying: 69.6 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600SRF Stand-by: 30.2 dB (A) Copying: 69.1 dB (A)</li> </ul>
Noise emission (Sound power level: Complete system)	<ul> <li>IM 550F</li> <li>Stand-by: 30.8 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 73.6 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600F</li> <li>Stand-by: 30.9 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 73.8 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600SRF</li> <li>Stand-by: 31.0 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 74.5 dB (A)</li> </ul>
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Main unit only)	<ul> <li>IM 550F</li> <li>Stand-by: 21.3 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 58.1 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600F</li> <li>Stand-by: 20.9 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 59.6 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600SRF</li> <li>Stand-by: 20.6 dB (A)</li> <li>Copying: 58.6 dB (A)</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Complete system)	<ul> <li>IM 550F Stand-by: 20.5 dB (A) Copying: 60.9 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600F Stand-by: 21.1 dB (A) Copying: 60.6 dB (A)</li> <li>IM 600SRF Stand-by: 21.0 dB (A) Copying: 61.5 dB (A)</li> </ul>
Noise emission	<ul> <li>Note</li> <li>Sound power levels and sound pressure levels are actual values measured in accordance with ISO 7779.</li> <li>Sound pressure levels are measured from the position of the bystander.</li> <li>The complete system of the IM 550F/IM 600F/IM 600SRF consists of the main unit, four 500-sheet paper feed units, and the caster table.</li> </ul>
Weight	<ul> <li>IM 550F/IM 600F: Approx. 29 kg (64 lb.)</li> <li>IM 600SRF: Approx. 40 kg (88 lb.)</li> </ul>

\* 1 Paper type used for two-sided print: Plain 1, Plain 2, Recycled Paper, Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Special Paper 3, Middle Thick, Thick Paper 1, Color Paper, Letterhead

# Specifications for the Document Server

ltem	Specifications
HDD (Document Server)	Approx. 76 GB
	Maximum: 9,000 pages (Total number of pages that can be stored with all functions combined.)
	Copy/A4 original: Approx. 2,000 pages
	Printer/A4/600 dpi, 1 bit: Approx. 2,000 pages
	Scanner/Full Color/A4/200 dpi, 8 bits/JPEG: Approx. 2,000 pages
	(Under the printer and scanner modes, the number of the pages that can be stored depends on the print image and original.)
Maximum number of stored documents	3,000 documents
Number of pages supported	Maximum: 2,000 pages
by memory sorting	Copy/A4 original: Approx. 2,000 pages
	Printer/A4/600 dpi, 1 bit: Approx. 2,000 pages
	(Under the printer mode, the number of pages that can be sorted depends on the print image.)

#### Vote

• After the documents have been stored up to the maximum, no more document can be stored. Delete unneeded documents.

## **Specifications for Facsimile**

This function may not be used depending on the telephone line or area status.

#### • Note

• To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

#### Fax Transmissions and Reception

ltem	Specifications
Standard	G3

ltem	Specifications
Resolution	<ul> <li>Standard: 8 × 3.85 lines/mm, 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 8 × 7.7 lines/mm, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 16 × 15.4 lines/mm, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)<sup>*1</sup></li> </ul>
Transmission time	3 seconds at 28,800 bps, Standard resolution (JBIG transmission: 2 seconds)
Data compression method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG <sup>*2</sup>
Maximum original size	Standard: A4□ or 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14□ Custom (W × H): 216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)
Maximum scanning size	216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)
Print process	Laser beam scanning and electro-photographic printing
Transmission speed	33,600 / 31,200 / 28,800 / 26,400 / 24,000 / 21,600 / 19,200 / 16,800 / 14,400 / 12,000 / 9,600 / 7,200 / 4,800 / 2,400 bps (auto shift down system)

- \*1 For Super Fine transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.
- \*2 JBIG transmission cannot be performed if the JBIG reception and ECM functions are not available on the destination fax. The ECM function is valid for communication over the G3 line.

ltem	Specifications
Network	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>
Transmit function	E-mail
Scan line density	<ul> <li>Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)<sup>*1*2</sup></li> </ul>
Original size: Scanning width	210 mm (A4₽)

ltem	Specifications
Communication Protocols	<ul> <li>Transmission: SMTP, TCP/IP</li> <li>Reception: POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP</li> </ul>
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion Attached file forms: TIFF-F (MH, MR <sup>*1</sup> , MMR <sup>*1</sup> compression)
Internet communication	Send and receive e-mail with a computer that has an e-mail address
Encryption method (for forwarding)	S/MIME
Internet Fax send functions:	Automatic conversion of sent documents to e-mail format and e-mail transmission. Memory transmission only.
Internet Fax receive functions	Automatic detection and printing of appended TIFF-F (MH) files and ASCII text. Memory reception only.

- \*1 Full mode
- \*2 For superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

#### **IP-Fax Transmissions and Reception**

ltem	Specifications
Network	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>
Scan line density	<ul> <li>Standard: 8 × 3.85 lines/mm, 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character), 8 × 7.7 lines/mm, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 8 × 15.4 lines/mm, 16 × 15.4 lines/mm, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)<sup>*1</sup></li> </ul>
Maximum original size	Standard: A4□ or 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14□ Custom (W × H): 216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)
Maximum scanning size	216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)

#### 10. Specifications for the Machine

ltem	Specifications
Transmission protocol	Recommendation: T.38, TCP, UDP/IP communication, SIP (RFC 3261 compliant), H.323 v2
Compatible machines	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function	Specify an IP address and send faxes to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending faxes to a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function	Receive faxes sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving faxes from a G3 fax connected to a telephone line via a VoIP gateway.

\*1 For detail-character and superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

#### Validated Peripherals

ltem	Specifications
Gateway (T.38 compliant)	InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305
	Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)
	Cisco VoIP-Gateway (Operation confirmed with H.323)
	Software version: IOS12.3 (5)
	Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3725, 847-4V, 26xx, 36xx, 37xx, 7200, AS5300, ICS 7750
	• Siemens VoIP-Gateway RG8300 (Operation confirmed with SIP)
	Software version: Version 5
	<ul> <li>Alcatel VX1200 (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 4.4.4 v69
	<ul> <li>FaxBack FMIS (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 8.6.5250.761
	<ul> <li>NEC Sphericall (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 6.0

ltem	Specifications
Gatekeeper	InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305
	Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)
	Cisco Gatekeeper
	Software version: IOS12.1 (2) T
	Platform: Cisco2600XM, 3620, 3640, 3660, 3725, 3745, 7200, 7400
SIP server	Cisco SIP proxy server
	Software version: Version 2.0
	Cisco VoIP-Gateway
	Software version: IOS12.3 (17) a
	Platform: Cisco3725 (256Mbyte RAM), Cisco2621XM (128Mbyte RAM)
	Cisco unified CallManager
	Software version: Ver10.5.2
	<ul> <li>InnovaPhone VoIP-Gateway IP305</li> </ul>
	Software version: v7 hotfix (09-70300.17)
	<ul> <li>Siemens HiPath8000 (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: Voice redundant v4
	<ul> <li>Alcatel OXE 4.1.503 (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 4.1.503
	<ul> <li>FaxBack FMIS (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 8.6.5250.761
	<ul> <li>NEC Sphericall (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 6.0
	<ul> <li>AVAYA PBX (Operation confirmed with SIP)</li> </ul>
	Software version: 5.2.1

#### • Note

- You can assign multiple addresses of the machine in the IPv6 environment, but only one address can receive IP-fax.
- The SIP connection is specified to connect to either IPv4 or IPv6 depending on the environment of the machine. To change the setting, contact your local dealer.

ltem	Specifications
Network	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>
Scan line density	<ul> <li>Standard: 200 × 100 dpi (Standard character)<sup>*1</sup>, 200 × 200 dpi (Detail character)</li> <li>Optional: 200 × 400 dpi, 400 × 400 dpi (Super Fine character)<sup>*2</sup></li> </ul>
Maximum original size	Standard: A4□ or 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 14□ Custom (W × H): 216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)
Maximum scanning size (w × h)	216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14.0 inches)
E-mail transmission protocols	SMTP, TCP/IP
Protocols for sending files to folders	SMB, FTP, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion
File formats	TIFF (MH, MR, MMR compression), PDF, PDF/A When you select PDF or PDF/A for the file format, you can attach a digital signature.
Authentication methods	SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP
Encryption method	S/MIME
E-mail sending functions	Automatically converts documents to e-mail format and sends them as e-mail.
Sending to folder functions	Sends scanned files over the network to shared folders or FTP server folders.

#### E-mail Transmission and Folder Transmission (Fax (Classic) only)

\*1 When you send documents in TIFF format.

\*2 For detail-character and superfine-character transmission, an expansion memory (optional) is required.

#### **E-mail Reception**

ltem	Specifications
Network	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>
E-mail reception protocols (Mail to Print)	POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
E-mail format	Single/Multi-part, MIME Conversion
File formats (Mail to Print)	JPEG (JFIF), PDF
Authentication methods	SMTP-AUTH, POP before SMTP, A-POP
Encryption method	S/MIME
E-mail receiving functions	Automatically detects and outputs JPEG and PDF documents attached to received e-mail.

# **Specifications for Printer**

#### Note

• To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

ltem	Specifications
Printing speed	<ul> <li>IM 550F</li> <li>A4<sup>D</sup>, 55 sheets/minute</li> <li>8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11<sup>D</sup>, 57 sheets/minute</li> <li>IM 600F/IM 600SRF</li> <li>A4<sup>D</sup>, 60 sheets/minute</li> <li>8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11<sup>D</sup>, 62 sheets/minute</li> <li>(A4<sup>D</sup>, 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11<sup>D</sup>, plain paper)</li> </ul>
Resolution	300 × 300 dpi, 600 × 600 dpi, 1,200 × 1,200 dpi

ltem	Specifications
Printer language	<ul> <li>Standard: PJL, RPCS, PCL 5e/XL, IRIPS PS3, IRIPS PDF Direct, MediaPrint (JPEG, TIFF)</li> <li>Option: PostScript 3, PDF Direct, IPDS, XPS</li> </ul>
Interface	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) USB2.0 (Type B) port USB2.0 (Type A) port (on the control panel) SD card slot (on the control panel)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 1284 parallel interface IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface File format converter Device server option</li> </ul>
Network protocol	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6)
USB interface	<ul> <li>Transmission spec: USB 2.0 Standard</li> <li>Connectable device: Devices corresponding to USB 2.0 Standard</li> </ul>
Operating system	<ul> <li>Windows 7/8.1/10</li> <li>Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019</li> <li>OS X 10.11 or later</li> </ul>
Fonts	<ul> <li>PostScript 3 Emulation, PCL 5e/6: 93 fonts</li> <li>PDF: 136 fonts, PDF Emulation: 93 fonts</li> <li>Genuine Adobe PostScript 3: 136 fonts</li> <li>IPDS: 108 fonts</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Store function	Total number of documents that can be stored: Up to 100 documents Number of pages for each document that can be stored: Up to 2,000
	pages
	Total number of pages of all documents that can be stored: Up to 9,000 pages
Sort function	Number of pages that can be sorted: Up to 2,000 pages Number of copies that can be sorted: Up to 999 copies

### Vote

- The maximum length for the cable connecting the machine to an Ethernet network is 100 meters.
- When you are using silent mode, the print speed may be slower.

### **Specifications for Scanner**

#### Note

• To connect the machine to the network, use a LAN cable supporting 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, and 10BASE-T. The length of the usable cable is up to 100 m.

#### Scanning

ltem	Specifications
Туре	Full-color scanner
Scan method	Flatbed scanning
Image sensor type	<ul> <li>Exposure glass: CCD Image Sensor</li> <li>ADF: <ul> <li>Front side: CCD Image Sensor</li> <li>Back side: CIS</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Scan type	Sheet, book, three-dimensional object
Original sizes that can be scanned	<ul> <li>Length: 10-216 mm (0.4-8.5 inches)</li> <li>Width: 10-356 mm (0.4-14.0 inches)</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Scan speed	<ul> <li>A4D: 60 pages/minute (black and white) 40 pages/minute (full color)</li> <li>8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D: 62 pages/minute (black and white) 42 pages/minute (full color)</li> <li>When using the Scan to Folder (Original size: A4D/8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11D, Resolution: 300 dpi, one-side scanning):</li> <li>Black and white Original Type: B &amp; W: Text / Photo, Compression (Black &amp; White): MMR, ITU-T No1 Chart</li> <li>Full color Original Type: Full Color: Text / Photo, Compression (Gray Scale / Full Color): Default, Original Chart</li> <li>Scanning speed differs depending on the operating environment of the machine and computer, scan settings, and the content of originals.</li> </ul>
Tone	<ul><li>Black &amp; White: 2 tones</li><li>Full Color/Gray Scale: 256 tones</li></ul>
Basic scanning resolution:	200 dpi
Image compression type for black and white (two-value)	TIFF (MH, MR, MMR, JBIG2)
Image compression type for gray scale/full color	JPEG
Interface	<ul> <li>Standard: Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) USB 2.0 (Type A) port (on the control panel) SD card slot (on the control panel)</li> <li>Option: IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n wireless LAN interface</li> </ul>
Network protocol	TCP/IP
WSD	Supported

ltem	Specifications
DSM	Supported <sup>*1</sup>

\*1 The function can be used only in Scanner (Classic).

#### **E-mail transmission**

ltem	Specifications
Scanning resolution	100 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi
Protocol <sup>* 1</sup>	SMTP
Output format	TIFF, JPEG, PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A

- \*1 Supporting Web mail transmission
- \*2 Supporting SMTP over SSL

#### Vote

- When you select [PDF], [High Compression PDF], or [PDF/A] for the file format, you can attach a digital signature. You can also specify the security settings for [PDF] or [High Compression PDF].
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- To specify High Compression PDF for the PDF type, the following settings are required:
  - Selecting Gray Scale or Full Color for [Send Settings]
  - Selecting other than [Scan Ratio] under [Send Settings]
  - Selecting [200 dpi], [300 dpi], [400 dpi], or [600 dpi] for [Resolution] under [Send Settings]
  - Selecting other than [Preview]
  - Specifying [PDF File Type: PDF/A Fixed] under [System Settings] to [Off]

#### Scan to Folder

ltem	Specifications
Scanning resolution	100 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi
Protocol	SMB, FTP
	<ul> <li>You can use SMB protocol (139/TCP, 137/UDP) or CIFS protocol (445/TCP) for sending folders with SMB.</li> </ul>
	• The Scan to Folder function with SMB protocol (139/TCP, 137/ UDP) is enabled under NetBIOS over TCP/IP environment only.
	<ul> <li>You cannot use the Scan to Folder function with SMB under NetBEUI.</li> </ul>

ltem	Specifications
Output format	TIFF, JPEG, PDF, High Compression PDF, PDF/A

#### **Vote**

- When you select [PDF], [High Compression PDF], or [PDF/A] for the file format, you can attach a digital signature. You can also specify the security settings for [PDF] or [High Compression PDF].
- See "Scanning an Original as a PDF with Security Setting Specified", User Guide (Full Version).
- To specify High Compression PDF for the PDF type, the following settings are required:
  - Selecting Gray Scale or Full Color for [Send Settings]
  - Selecting other than [Scan Ratio] under [Send Settings]
  - Selecting [200 dpi], [300 dpi], [400 dpi], or [600 dpi] for [Resolution] under [Send Settings]
  - Selecting other than [Preview]
  - Specifying [PDF File Type: PDF/A Fixed] under [System Settings] to [Off]

#### Network TWAIN Scanner

ltem	Specifications
Scanning resolution	When using the exposure glass: 100–1,200 dpi <sup>*1</sup> When using the ADF: 100–600 dpi <sup>*1</sup>
Protocol	TCP/IP
Operating system	<ul> <li>Windows 7/8.1/10</li> <li>Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019</li> </ul>
	(TWAIN scanner runs in 32-bit compatible mode on a 64-bit operating system, so TWAIN scanner is not compatible with 64-bit applications. Use 32-bit applications.)

\*1 The maximum resolution depends on the scan size.

#### WIA scanner

ltem	Specifications
Scanning resolution (Main scanning × Sub- scanning)	100–1,200 dpi <sup>*1</sup>
Protocol	TCP/IP

ltem	Specifications
Operating system	<ul> <li>Windows 7/8.1/10</li> <li>Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019</li> <li>(WIA scanner can function under both 32- and 64-bit operating systems.)</li> </ul>

\*1 The maximum resolution depends on the scan size.

# Specifications for the ADF

ltem	Specifications
Mode	Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)
	Batch mode, SADF mode, Original Orientation mode, Custom Size originals mode
	Region B (mainly North America)
	Batch mode, SADF mode, LT/LG Mixed Sizes mode, Original Orientation mode, Custom Size originals mode
Original size	One-sided: A4D-A6D, $8^1/_2 \times 14D - 5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2D$
	Two-sided: A4D-A6D, $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14D - 5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}D$
Original weight	50–120 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13–44 lb. Cover)
Number of originals to be set	100 sheets (50–80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 13–20 lb. Bond)
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.

# Specifications for Paper Feed Unit

ltem	Specifications
Page size	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 20 lb. Bond)	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 190 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"

ltem	Specifications
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	13 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	380 × 410 × 121 mm (15.0 × 16.2 × 4.8 inches)
Weight	Approx. 4 kg (8.9 lb.)

# Specifications for IEEE 1284 Interface Board

ltem	Specifications
Transmission spec	IEEE 1284
Required cable	Standard IEEE 1284 compliant Micro Centronics 36 pin cable

### Specifications for Wireless LAN Board

#### 🔁 Important

 Note that the available channels (frequency ranges) and locations to use the wireless LAN are subject to the regulations of the country or region where the printer is used. Be sure to use the wireless LAN according to the applicable regulations.

ltem	Specifications
Transmission spec	Based on IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (wireless LAN)
Protocol	TCP/IP
Ad-hoc mode Channel Frequency range (Center Frequency)	<ul> <li>2412–2462 MHz (1–11 channels)</li> <li>5180–5240 MHz (36, 40, 44, and 48 channels)</li> </ul>
Transmission mode	<ul> <li>Ad-hoc mode</li> <li>Infrastructure mode</li> <li>Direct Connection Mode</li> <li>Direct Connection: Group Owner Mode</li> </ul>

#### Vote

- Web Image Monitor is supported.
- The transmission rates of 300 Mbps in the 5 GHz band and 130 Mbps in the 2.4 GHz band are theoretical values of the wireless LAN specification. The actual transmission rate may be lower, depending on the operating environment.
- The maximum transmission rate in the ad-hoc mode is 11 Mbps for IEEE 802.11b. The Ad-hoc communication is not supported in an IEEE 802.11g/n environment.
- Channels other than 1–11 and 36–52 cannot be used because of the specifications and the configuration of the access point.
- The channel in use might differ depending on the country.

#### **Specifications for Device Server Option**

ltem	Specifications
Interface	<ul> <li>Gigabit Ethernet (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T)</li> <li>USB 2.0 (For connecting the printer and the print server interface)</li> </ul>
Operating systems	<ul> <li>Windows 7/8/8.1/10, Windows Server 2008/2008 R2/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019</li> <li>OS X 10.11 or later</li> </ul>
Protocol	<ul> <li>Port 9100, IPP, LPR</li> <li>IPP does not support SPL.</li> <li>The device server option allows simultaneous connection of up to eight sessions of printing protocols.</li> </ul>

# The Setting Values of the Transmission Function

#### Vote

• Depending on the type or settings of a document or original, you may not be able to specify or enter the maximum number of destinations or characters.

# Send Email

ltem	Value	Remarks
Maximum number of characters entered in a subject	128 alphanumeric characters	-
Maximum number of characters entered in the an e-mail message	<ul> <li>When selecting an item from the destination list in the address book: 380 alphanumeric characters (76 alphanumeric characters × 5 lines)</li> <li>When entering manually: 76 alphanumeric characters</li> </ul>	You cannot select an item from the destination list in the address book and enter the value manually at the same time.
Maximum number of characters entered in an e-mail address	128 alphanumeric characters	An e-mail; address that has been searched from the LDAP server and exceeds 128 alphanumeric characters cannot be specified correctly as the destination.
Number of destinations that can be specified at one time	500	Up to 100 items can be specified when entering an item manually (including the items specified by LDAP search) For the rest, select up to 400 items from the registered destinations.
Size of a document that can be sent	Up to 700 MB per document	-
Number of pages that can be sent	Up to 2,000 pages per document	-

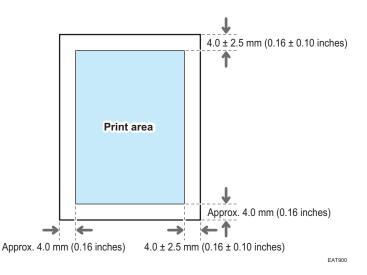
# Send to Folder

ltem	Value	Remarks
Maximum number of characters in a path name specified for the SMB protocol	256 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a user name specified for the SMB protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a password specified for the SMB protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a server name specified for the FTP protocol	64 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a path name specified for the FTP protocol	256 characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a user name specified for the FTP protocol	64 alphanumeric characters	-
Maximum number of characters in a password specified for the FTP protocol	64 alphanumeric characters	-
Number of destinations that can be specified at one time	50	Up to 50 items can be entered also when entering the items manually.
Size of a document that can be sent	2,000 MB per document	-

# **Broadcast Transmission**

ltem	Value	Remarks
Total number of destinations that can be specified for Send Email and Send to Folder	550	-
Number of destinations that can be specified when sending a document by Send Email	500	Up to 100 items can be specified when entering an item manually (including the items specified by LDAP search)
Number of destinations that can be specified when sending a document by Send to Folder	50	-

## Printable Area and Margin

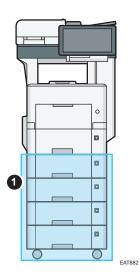


#### **Vote**

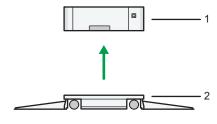
- The machine does not support edge-to-edge printing. To minimize the margins, specify the maximum printable area with the settings on the printer driver.
- See "Maximizing the Printable Area When Printing", User Guide (Full Version).
- The printable area may vary due to the paper size or settings of the printer driver.
- The outside of the printable area can be printed due to the settings of the printer driver or printing condition; however, the print result may be different from the intended one or the paper may not be fed correctly.
- The print area may vary depending on the paper size, printer language, and printer driver settings.
- Depending on the printer driver settings, you may be able to print outside the recommended print area. However, the actual output may not come out as desired, or a paper feed problem may occur.

## **Machine Options**

## Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options



#### (1) Options Mounted on the Machine's Bottom



EAT883

No.	Option	Description									
1	Paper Feed Unit	Paper is loaded here. You can load up to 500 sheets of paper.									
2	Caster Table for Paper Feed Unit	To use the paper feed unit, attach the caster table. Allows you to move the machine easily.									

## Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options

• Expansion Memory

Provides 60 MB of additional memory for the facsimile function. (Standard 4 MB)

This allows you to send and receive fax documents at high resolution (Super Fine), and also to receive fax documents at high resolution (Fine). This enables you to increase the number of sheets of originals that can be stored in memory.

• PostScript 3 unit

Allows you to output using Genuine Adobe PostScript 3.

• OCR unit

Recognizes the scanned originals optically, and creates a PDF with the text data embedded.

• IPDS unit

Allows you to print using Intelligent Printer Data Stream (IPDS).

XPS card

Allows you to directly output XPS files.

• Device server option

Allows you to add an Ethernet port to the printer. Allows you to print using the printer function via a network other than that connected to the machine.

• IEEE 1284 interface board

Allows you to connect to an IEEE 1284 cable.

• Wireless LAN board

Allows you to communicate over wireless LAN.

• File format converter

Allows you to download documents that are stored in the Document Server to the computer.

• 
 (mainly Europe)/
 Region B (mainly North America)

Enhanced Security HDD

Allows you to enhance the security of the hard disk by using an encryption function that is compliant with FIPS 140-2.

• Fax connection unit

Allows you to send and receive faxes via a different machine that has the fax unit installed.

• VM card

Allows you to install applications compatible with the "Embedded Software Architecture" platform.

To expand the function of this machine, various applications written in Java language can be added.



- Only one of the following can be installed: IEEE 1284 interface board, wireless LAN board, file format converter, or device server option.
- Only one of the following can be installed on the machine at any one time: hard disk and Enhanced Security HDD.

• The Ethernet interface and wireless LAN board cannot be used simultaneously.

## Functions Requiring Optional Configurations

When options are installed, the functions and interface of this machine can be expanded.

• The options that can be installed differ depending on the models.

page 324 "Machine Options"

### **Copy Function**

Function/Reference	Option
Region B (mainly North America)	Paper feed unit
LT/LG Mixed Sizes mode	
See "Copying Mixed-size Originals (mainly North America)", User Guide (Full Version).	

## **Facsimile Functions**

Function/Reference	Option
Transmission of Super Fine resolution See "Sending a Fax at the Image Quality Suitable for the Original", User Guide (Full Version).	Expansion Memory
Reception of Fine or Super Fine resolution	
Remote Fax <sup>*1</sup>	Fax connection unit
See "Overview of the Remote Fax Function", User Guide (Full Version).	

\*1 A sub-machine on which fax function is not included can send and receive faxes using the fax function of the main-machine connected via network. This function is available when fax connection units are installed in the main- and sub-machines.

## **Printer Function**

Function/Reference	Option
Genuine Adobe PostScript 3 <sup>*1</sup>	PostScript 3 unit
XPS	XPS card

\*1 If an optional Genuine Adobe PostScript 3 is installed, the built-in standard PostScript 3 cannot be used.

## **Scanner Function**

Function/Reference	Option
Creating PDF files with OCR text information See "Scanning an Original as a PDF File with Embedded Text Data", User Guide (Full Version).	OCR unit

### Others

Function/Reference	Option
Wireless LAN communication See "Connecting to a Wireless LAN", User Guide (Full Version).	Wireless LAN board
Parallel Interface Connection See "Connecting an IEEE 1284 cable", User Guide (Full Version).	IEEE 1284 interface board
Extra Ethernet Interface (for Printer) See "Connecting a LAN Cable", User Guide (Full Version).	Device server option
Quick Card Authentication	NFC card reader
Region A (mainly Europe) Specifying the HDD authentication code	Enhanced Security HDD

Function/Reference	Option
Region B (mainly North America)	Enhanced Security HDD
Specifying the HDD authentication code	

# **Function Compatibility**

#### Function Compatibility

	Mode after you select						rrupt ying			F	ax				Printer		Sca	nner	TWAIN		ocume Servei		Web Documen Server
								la la	Tra	nsmis	sion	Reco	ption		Pr	int				ją.	ċ	vor	
Mode before you select			Operations for Copying	Stepling	Sort	Operations for Copying	Copying	Transmission Operation/Mar Reception Operation	Scanning an Original for Memory Transmission	Memory Transmission	Imme diate Transmission	Memory Reception	Printing Received Data*9	Data Reception	Printing	Stepting	Operations for Scanning	Scanring	Scanning	Operations for Document Ser-	Scanning a Document to Store Document Server	Printing from Document Serv	Printing
	Opt	rations for Copying	X	×	×	0	0	٠	•	0	٠	0	0	0	0	0	٠	٠	•	•	٠	٠	•
Сору	Sta	aling	0"1	<b>A</b> *1	<b>A</b> *1	0	O*5	٠	•*2	0	<b>0</b> *2	0	0	0	0	۸		•*2	<b>e</b> *2		●*2		O'4
	Sor	1	0'1	<b>A</b> *1	<b>A</b> *1	0	0	٠	•*2	0	<b>0</b> *2	0	0	0	0	0	•	•*2	•*2		●*2		0
Interrupt Copying	Opt	rations for Copying	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
interrupt oopying	Cop	ying	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	0	×	0		0			×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	Tra	smission Operation/ Manual Reception Operation	•	•	•	0	0	×	×	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	•	•	•	•	٠	٠	0
Fax	sion	Scanning an Original for Memory Transmission	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	0
	Transmiss	Memory Transmission	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	<b>0</b> °3	<b>0</b> .3	<b>0</b> '3	07	0	0	0	0	0	0	۰	0	۰	0
		Immediate Transmission	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	<b>0</b> °3	×	<b>0</b> °3	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	0
	Rec eption	Memory Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	<b>0</b> °3	<b>0</b> '3	<b>0</b> '3	<b>0</b> '7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	٥	0
	2	Printing Received Data	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.1	0	0.1	<b>▲</b> *8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Dat	a Reception	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			٨	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Printer	E	Printing	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	O*10	0			0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	P	Stapling	0		0	0	O*5	0	0	0	0	0	O*10	0			0	0	0	0	0	<b>O</b> *4	O'4
Scanner	Opt	rations for Scanning	•	•	•	0	0	٠	•	0	•	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	•	•	٠	٠	0
Jeanner	Sca	nning	٠	●*2	●*2	O*2	O*2	٠	●*2	0	<b>0</b> *2	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	•	٠	٠	0
TWAIN	Sca	nning	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	×	×	×	×	×	×	0
	- · ·	rations for Document Server	٠	•	•	0	0	٠	•	0	٠	0	0	0	0	0	٠	٠	•	×	×	×	0
Document Server	_	nning a Document to Store in Document Server	•	×	×	0	0	٠	×	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	٠	×	×	×	×	×	0
		ting from Document Server	•	▲ 0'4	•	0	0	•	0	0	0	0	O*10	0	0	0	0	0	0	016	0%	<b>▲</b> *6	0
Web Document Server												0	O*10	0		0	0	0	0			0	0



• The scanning speed may become slower when scanning an original with another function while executing printing.

EATERS

#### Function Compatibility

The symbols in the cells have the following meanings: Blank: These modes can be used together.
 These modes cannot be used together. The second mode selected will be the mode you are working in.
 X: These modes cannot be used together. The first mode selected will be the mode you are working in.
 Functions

$\square$	Functions																F	uncti	ion s	elect	ted s	econ	d															
	$\backslash$	Γ						÷																		Τ									Π		Π	
Fun	tions	LT/LG Mixed Sizes	Regular Size Originals	Custom Size Originals	Original Orientation (Readable)	Original Orientation (Unreadable)	Original Orientation: 180 Degrees (Readable)	Original Orientation: 180 Degrees (Unreadable)	Auto Image Density	Manual Image Density	Manual Paper Select	Bypass Tray	Auto Reduce / Enlarge	Reduce / Enlarge	Create Margin	Original: One-Sided	Original: Two-sided	Original: Spread	Poster	One Sided-Copying	2 Sided	Combine	Booklet	Magazine	ID Card Copy	Image Repeat	Margin Adjustment	Centering	Erase Center/ Border	Background Numbering	Stamp*1	Covers	Designate	Slip Sheet	Sort	Stack	Staple	Store File
	LT/LG Mixed Sizes		×	×									×	×	×			×	×			×	×	×	×	×		×	×			×	×	×				H
	Regular Size Originals	×		•																						Т												
	Custom Size Originals	×		K															×																			
	Original Orientation (Readable)						•																			T											×*2	
	Original Orientation (Unreadable)					ŀ	•	•										×																				
	Original Orientation: 180 Degrees (Readable)				•		K																														×*2	
	Original Orientation: 180 Degrees (Unreadable)				•	•		1																														
	Auto Image Density				•	•	•																															
	Manual Image Density																		-												_							
	Manual Paper Select																														_							
	Bypass Tray										•	-											×	×							×	×	×				×	×
	Auto Reduce / Enlarge	×									•												^	^	•						^	^	^				Ĥ	^
	Reduce / Enlarge	×																							•	•					_							
	Create Margin	×											•						• ×						×			×			_							
	Original: One-Sided	^																							^			^			_							
	Original: Two-sided																•	•	•						×							x'1	×''	-		_		
t	-	×				×										•		•	•			•	•	•	×						_	×	×					
Function selected first	Original; Spread	-				*								×		_	٠		•								×	×	×	×	×		_					
lecte	Poster	×		×					×					×	×	٠	٠	٠		•	٠	•	•	•	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×				
n se	One Sided-Copying																		٠		•	•	•	•		-					_							
nctio	Duplex																		٠	•	$\geq$	•	٠	•	×	-	-		_		_			×				
P.	Combine	×																٠	٠	٠	•		•	•		×								×				
	Booklet	×										×						٠	٠	٠	٠	•	$\mathbf{N}$	•	-	×	_		_		_	×	×	×			×	×
	Magazine	×										×						۰	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	1	×	×							×	×			×	
	ID Card Copy	×											×		×		×	×	×		×	×	×	×	X	×		×	×			×	×	×				
	Image Repeat	×											×						×			×	×	×	×	V						×	×	×				×
	Margin Adjustment																		×								Y				_							
	Centering	×													×				×						×			1										
	Erase Center/ Border	×																	×			_		_	×		_	_	N	_								
	Background Numbering																		×											1				×				
	Stamp*1											×							×												$\mathbf{i}$							
	Covers	×										×					×"1	×	×				×			×						1		٠				
	Designate	×										×					×*1	×	×				×	×	×	×							$\backslash$	•				
	Slip Sheet	×																	×		×	×	×	×	×	×				×		٠	•	1	×		×	
	Sort																					_					_		_					×	$\square$	٠		
	Stack																																		•	$\backslash$	•	
	Staple				×*2		×*2					×											×	×										×		٠	$\geq$	
	Store File	1	I.	1								×											×			×												

EATB96

10

# 11. Legal and Contact Information

## **Environmental Regulations**

### **ENERGY STAR Program**

#### (mainly North America)

#### ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment



This company is a participant in the ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Program. This machine is compliant with the regulations specified by the ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Program.

The ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment encourage energy conservation by promoting energy efficient computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products that feature energy saving functions.

It is an open program in which manufacturers participate voluntarily.

Targeted products are computers, monitors, printers, scanners, and multi-function devices. Energy Star standards and logos are internationally uniform.

### **Energy Saving Functions**

If this machine remains idle for a specified period of time or when [Energy Save] ((\_\_) is pressed, it enters Sleep mode to further reduce its electrical consumption. This is called "Sleep Mode".

- The default delay time the machine waits before entering Sleep mode is one minute.
- The machine can print jobs from computers and receive faxes while in Sleep mode.
- The time it takes to recover from the energy saving functions and low power consumption in Sleep Mode may differ depending on the machine.

Region B (mainly North America)

Model Name	Power Consumption in Sleep Mode	Power Consumption in Low Power Mode	Time to Recover from Sleep Mode	Time to Recover from Low Power Mode	Duplex Function <sup>*1</sup>
IM 550F	0.60 W	54.83 W	25 seconds	9 seconds	Standard
IM 600F	0.60 W	54.83 W	25 seconds	9 seconds	Standard
IM 600SRF	0.60 W	62.51 W	25 seconds	9 seconds	Standard

\* 1 Achieves ENERGY STAR energy savings; product fully qualifies when packaged with (or used with) a duplex tray and the duplex function is enabled as an option.

#### Vote

- You can change the amount of time that the machine waits before entering Sleep mode under [Sleep Mode Timer].
- See "Timer Settings", User Guide (Full Version).
- It may take longer than the specified time to enter Sleep mode according to the type of Embedded Software Architecture application installed in the machine.

# User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Region A (mainly Europe)

# Users in the countries where this symbol shown in this section has been specified in national law on collection and treatment of E-waste

Our Products contain high quality components and are designed to facilitate recycling.

Our products or product packaging are marked with the symbol below.



The symbol indicates that the product must not be treated as municipal waste. It must be disposed of separately via the appropriate return and collection systems available. By following these instructions you ensure that this product is treated correctly and help to reduce potential impacts on the environment and human health, which could otherwise result from inappropriate handling. Recycling of products helps to conserve natural resources and protect the environment.

For more detailed information on collection and recycling systems for this product, please contact the shop where you purchased it, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

#### All Other Users

If you wish to discard this product, please contact your local authorities, the shop where you bought this product, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

#### For Turkey only

AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur. Bu sistem sarf malzemeleri ve yedek parçaları da dahil olmak üzere AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

#### Üretici:

Ricoh Company, Ltd.

3-6, Nakamagome 1-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 143-8555 Japan +81-3-3777-8111 (English only/Sadece İngilizce)



In accordance with the Battery Directive 2006/66/EC Article 20 Information for end-users Annex II, the above symbol is printed on batteries and accumulators.

This symbol means that in the European Union, used batteries and accumulators should be disposed of separately from your household waste.

In the EU, there are separate collection systems for not only used electrical and electronic products but also batteries and accumulators.

Please dispose of them correctly at your local community waste collection/recycling centre.

### Environmental Advice for Users (Region A (mainly Europe)

#### Users in the EU, Switzerland and Norway

#### **Consumables yield**

Please refer to either the User's Manual for this information or the packaging of the consumable.

#### **Recycled** paper

The machine can use recycled paper which is produced in accordance with European standard EN 12281:2002 or DIN 19309. For products using EP printing technology, the machine can print on 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper, which contains less raw materials and represents a significant resource reduction.

#### Duplex printing (if applicable)

Duplex printing enables both sides of a sheet of paper to be used. This saves paper and reduces the size of printed documents so that fewer sheets are used. We recommend that this feature is enabled whenever you print.

#### Toner and ink cartridge return program

Toner and ink cartridge for recycling will be accepted free of charge from users in accordance with local regulations.

For details about the return program, please refer to the Web page below or consult your service person.

https://www.ricoh-return.com/

#### **Energy efficiency**

The amount of electricity a machine consumes depends as much on its specifications as it does on the way you use it. The machine is designed to allow you to reduce electricity costs by switching to Ready mode after it prints the last page. If required, it can immediately print again from this mode. If no additional prints are required and a specified period of time passes, the device switches to an energy saving mode.

In these modes, the machine consumes less power (watts). If the machine is to print again, it needs a little longer to return from an energy saving mode than from Ready mode.

For maximum energy savings, we recommend that the default setting for power management is used.

# Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA) (Region B) (mainly North America)

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply. See: www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/ perchlorate

## Trademarks (User Guide)

Adobe, Acrobat, PostScript, and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd. is under license.

Firefox is registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation.

Dropbox is a registered trademark or trademark of Dropbox, Inc.

Google, Android, Google Drive, and Chrome are trademarks of Google Inc.

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Kerberos is a trademark of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).

macOS, OS X, Bonjour, and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corp. in the United States and/or other countries.

PictBridge is a trademark.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and in other countries. The SD and SD logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.



This product includes RSA BSAFE® Cryptographic software of EMC Corporation. RSA and BSAFE are registered trademarks or trademarks of EMC Corporation in the United States and other countries.

The proper names of Internet Explorer 11 is as follows:

• Internet Explorer<sup>®</sup> 11

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

• The product names of Windows 7 are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 Home Premium

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 Professional

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 Ultimate

- Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 7 Enterprise
- The product names of Windows 8.1 are as follows:

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1 Pro

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 8.1 Enterprise

- The product names of Windows 10 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 10 Home Premium Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 10 Pro Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 10 Enterprise Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 10 Education
- The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 Standard Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 Standard Edition without Hyper-V Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 Enterprise Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 Enterprise Edition without Hyper-V
- The product names of Windows Server 2008 R2 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 R2 Standard Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2008 R2 Enterprise
- The product names of Windows Server 2012 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 Foundation Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 Essentials Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 Standard
- The product names of Windows Server 2012 R2 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 R2 Foundation Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 R2 Essentials Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2012 R2 Standard
- The product names of Windows Server 2016 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2016 Datacenter Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2016 Standard Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2016 Essentials Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2016 MultiPoint<sup>®</sup> Premium Server
- The product names of Windows Server 2019 are as follows: Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2019 Datacenter Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2019 Standard Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>®</sup> 2019 Essentials

Wi-Fi<sup>®</sup> and Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

Microsoft product screen shots reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

MEMO



